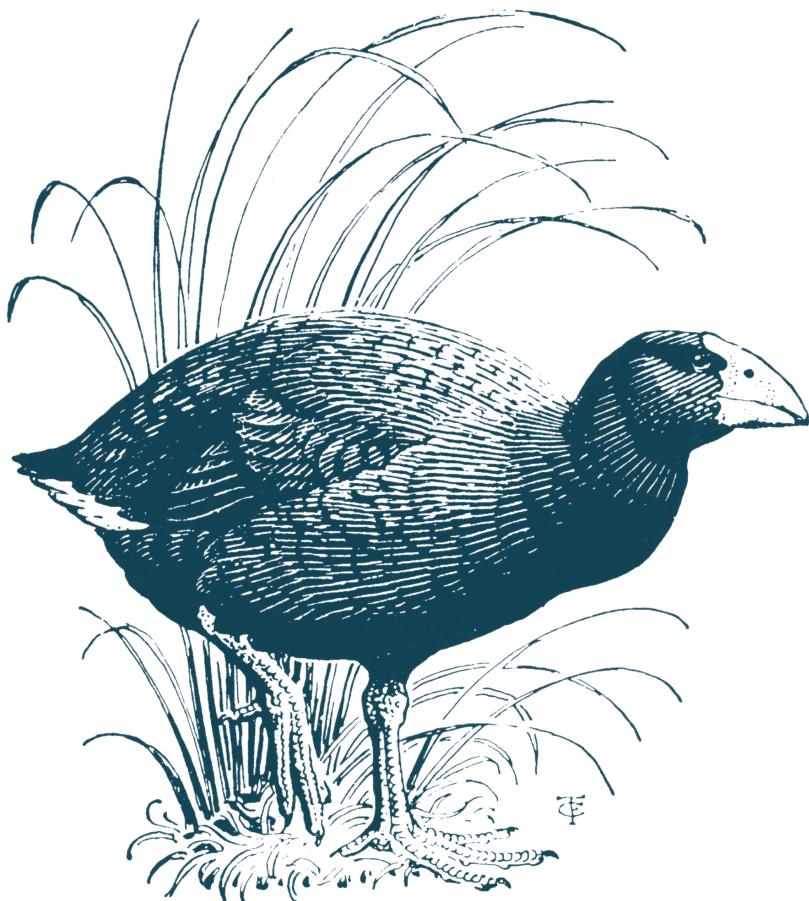


AMENDMENTS TO
THE 2010 CHECKLIST OF THE
BIRDS
OF NEW ZEALAND



2022

ORNITHOLOGICAL SOCIETY OF NEW ZEALAND

First published in Wellington, New Zealand (online only) in 2022 by
Ornithological Society of New Zealand

© Ornithological Society of New Zealand, Inc., 2022

This publication is copyright. Apart from any fair dealing for the purpose of private study, research, criticism, or review, as permitted under the Copyright Act, no part of this publication may be reproduced by any process, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form, without the prior permission of the Ornithological Society of New Zealand.

Cataloguing-in-Publication Data

Amendments to the 2010 checklist of the birds of New Zealand

Includes bibliographical references.

Ornithological Society of New Zealand Occasional Publications (May 2022)
(ISSN 2815-8121)

Ornithological Society of New Zealand Occasional Publication No. 2
(Published May 2022)

1. Birds—New Zealand. 2. Extinct birds—New Zealand.

I. Ornithological Society of New Zealand. Checklist Committee.

II. Checklist of the birds of New Zealand.

Recommended Citation

Miskelly, C.M.; Forsdick, N.J.; Gill, B.J.; Palma, R.L.; Rawlence, N.J. & Tennyson, A.J.D. 2022. *Amendments to the 2010 Checklist of the birds of New Zealand*. Ornithological Society of New Zealand Occasional Publication No. 2. Wellington: Ornithological Society of New Zealand.

Cover design by Shaun Lee

Page layout by Geoff Norman

AMENDMENTS TO THE 2010 CHECKLIST OF THE BIRDS OF NEW ZEALAND

COLIN M. MISKELLY

Museum of New Zealand Te Papa Tongarewa, PO Box 467, Wellington 6140, New Zealand

NATALIE J. FORSDICK

Manaaki Whenua – Landcare Research, Private Bag 92170, Auckland 1142, New Zealand

BRIAN J. GILL

Auckland War Memorial Museum (retired), P.O. Box 78204, Grey Lynn, Auckland 1245, New Zealand

RICARDO L. PALMA

Museum of New Zealand Te Papa Tongarewa (retired), PO Box 467, Wellington 6140, New Zealand

NICOLAS J. RAWLENCE

Otago Palaeogenetics Laboratory, Department of Zoology, University of Otago, Dunedin 9016, New Zealand

ALAN J.D. TENNYSON

Museum of New Zealand Te Papa Tongarewa, PO Box 467, Wellington 6140, New Zealand

Abstract The fifth edition (2022) of the *Checklist of the Birds of New Zealand* no longer includes birds from Norfolk Island, Macquarie Island, or the Ross Dependency, Antarctica, unless those species also occur in or have reached New Zealand. Since the publication of the 2010 *Checklist of the Birds New Zealand*, one previously unknown living taxon (a snipe) has been described, an endemic shag has been split into 2 species, 2 endemic subspecies of petrels have been described, and 11 new vagrant species (3 petrels, 1 booby, 1 shag, 1 ibis, 1 sandpiper, 1 gull, 1 pigeon, and 2 passerines) plus one subspecies (a booby) and two named hybrids (a kiwi and a sandpiper) have been accepted as occurring in New Zealand as at Feb. 2022. The Australian little penguin (*Eudyptula minor novaehollandiae*) has also been recognised as present and breeding in New Zealand, and the American whimbrel (*Numenius hudsonicus*) is here recognised as a full species. One vagrant species (black falcon *Falco subniger*) has been removed from the New Zealand list, crimson rosella (*Platycercus elegans*) is now considered to be a failed introduction, and the blue shag (= southern populations of the spotted shag *Phalacrocorax punctatus*) is no longer recognised as a diagnosable taxon. Royal penguin (*Eudyptes chrysolophus schlegeli*) and Waitaha penguin (*Megadyptes antipodes waitaha*) are here treated as subspecies rather than full species; and mainland ravens (formerly *Corvus antipodum*, now *Corvus moriorum*) are here treated as subspecies of a single species that also occurred on the Chatham Islands, rather than as a full species. The great spotted kiwi (*Apteryx maxima*) requires this name change, as the type specimens of *Apteryx haastii* are hybrids between two other species. Eight recently extinct taxa (including two subspecies) have been described or resurrected (2 swans, a duck, 2 penguins, a petrel, a shag, and a parrot), and 30 species that became extinct more than c. 1 million years ago have been described. These comprised 2 kiwi, 1 pseudotoothed bird, 1 palaelodus, 1 pigeon, 1 adzebill, 2 rails, 2 waders, 9 penguins, 1 albatross, 1 petrel, 1 shearwater, 1 other seabird, 1 heron, 1 bittern, 4 parrots, and 1 passerine. One further fossil species (a tropicbird) was described but not named, and Moisley's penguin (*Tereingaornis moisleyi*) is no longer considered to be a diagnosable taxon. These 30 new fossil species were found in deposits of the following epochs: Paleocene (7), Eocene (1), Oligocene (2), Miocene (15), Pliocene (4), and Pleistocene (1). The richest areas for discovering new species were the lacustrine deposits of the St Bathans region of Central Otago (all 15 Miocene records), and Paleocene marine deposits of the Waipara River in North Canterbury (6 species). Four Pliocene seabirds were from marine sediments in south Taranaki. The new fossil species records are the first for several orders of birds in New Zealand: Apterygiiformes (kiwi), Phoenicopteriformes (palaelodids), Phaethontiformes (tropicbirds), Pelicaniformes (herons), Charadriiformes (waders), Columbiformes (pigeons), Psittaciformes (parrots), and Passeriformes (perching birds). The 30 pre-Holocene species described since 2010 exceeds the 28 valid species described between 1859 and 2009. The total number of bird species, including fossil species, now accepted from the New Zealand region is 485 (this excludes Norfolk Island, Macquarie Island, Ross Sea, subspecies, and two hybrid taxa).

Keywords new species; vagrant birds; extinct; fossil birds; New Zealand; taxonomy; nomenclature; synonymy

INTRODUCTION

Many new discoveries that potentially affect the scientific and common names of New Zealand birds have been published since the publication of the fourth edition of the *Checklist of the Birds New Zealand* (Checklist Committee 2010). This article summarises the conclusions of the Birds New Zealand Checklist Committee, which has drawn on new publications that deal with the classification and names of birds, and suggested additions to the New Zealand list. Most of these concern the description of new species or subspecies, both living (Miskelly & Baker 2010a; Fischer *et al.* 2018) and extinct (e.g. Worthy *et al.* 2011a,b; Ksepka *et al.* 2012; Mayr & Scofield 2014; Williams *et al.* 2014; Tennyson & Tomotani 2021a,b). A key source of new information has been the Birds New Zealand Records Appraisal Committee, which has published six summaries of accepted records of unusual birds in New Zealand reported between 2008 and 2020 (Miskelly *et al.* 2011, 2013, 2015, 2017, 2019, 2021). There have also been several phylogenetic reviews of taxa that affect the names of New Zealand birds (e.g. B. Robertson *et al.* 2011; Mitchell, Wood *et al.* 2014, 2016; Rawlence *et al.* 2016).

While most changes relate to individual names (e.g. species, family, etc.), some decisions affected several bird groups. For example, the Committee agreed to remove “and allies” from all higher level names, following most overseas authorities who consider that “allies” is undefinable and unnecessary. All the changes summarised here are incorporated in the fifth edition of the *Checklist of the Birds New Zealand* (Checklist Committee 2022), which is otherwise based on the fourth edition (Checklist Committee 2010).

The Checklist Committee currently consists of six members. Recommendations are drafted by Committee members, assigned a reference number based on the calendar year, and circulated for comment and voting. Our terms of reference state that for a change to be adopted, at least five of the six Committee members must agree. A high ‘bar’ for adopting changes was set because we follow the International Commission on Zoological Nomenclature in advocating taxonomic stability as a core principle.

Major changes to the *Checklist of the Birds New Zealand* are listed here in the same taxonomic order as they are presented in the revised checklist (Checklist Committee 2022). The recommended taxonomic order of new extant species added to the list, relative to species already in the list, is based on Dickinson & Remsen (2013) and Dickinson & Christidis (2014). Taxa with minor changes to their text (e.g. amended taxonomic synonymies, and updated distribution records) that do not otherwise appear in the main text are listed on pp. 44–46.

Geographical coverage

The fifth edition of the Checklist covers New Zealand only. This is in contrast to the four previous Checklists, all of which covered parts of Australian territory (Macquarie Island, and – in 2010 – Norfolk Island), and three of which covered the Ross Dependency, Antarctica:

1953 edition	New Zealand plus Macquarie Island
1970 edition	New Zealand plus Macquarie Island and Ross Dependency
1990 edition	New Zealand plus Macquarie Island and Ross Dependency
2010 edition	New Zealand plus Norfolk Island, Macquarie Island, and Ross Dependency
2022 edition	New Zealand

Note that New Zealand includes the Chatham Islands / Rēkohu / Wharekauri, the Kermadec Islands / Rangitāhua north-east of New Zealand, and five subantarctic island groups south of New Zealand (Snares Islands / Tini Heke, Bounty Islands / Moutere Hauriri, Antipodes Islands / Moutere Mahue, Auckland Islands / Maukahuka, and Campbell Island / Motu Ihupuku).

Sequence that orders, families, genera and species are presented in

The sequence in which orders and families are presented has been substantially changed since the 2010 Checklist, due to greater understanding of the relationships and divergence times of major bird groups, as well as the species within them. The sequence used largely follows those used by Cracraft (2013, 2014), Dickinson & Remsen (2013), Dickinson & Christidis (2014), Clements *et al.* (2019), Handbook of the Birds of the World and BirdLife International (2020), Chesser *et al.* (2020), and F. Gill *et al.* (2021). Species within a genus, and subspecies of a species, are listed from north to south (according to their distribution) if there is no strong evidence for a phylogenetic sequence, with Chatham Islands and subantarctic taxa placed after South Island and Stewart Island / Rakiura taxa.

Common names (English, Māori, and Moriori)

A primary role of the four previous editions of the *Checklist of the Birds of New Zealand* has been to provide guidance on the names to use for New Zealand birds. This has included English and Māori bird names, as well as scientific names. Māori bird names have become increasingly widely used by the general public and the scientific community in recent years (Wehi *et al.* 2019), and this is reflected in this revision of the Checklist.

Māori bird names have been moved from Appendix 3 and reinserted in the main Checklist, where they are presented alongside English bird names, on either side of a vertical bar. The two names presented (English and Māori) are considered equivalent; authors and editors of Birds New Zealand publications can use either name without explanation or justification.

The name presented to the left of the bar is the name that has been used most often in the journal *Notornis* over the previous decade (or decades, for species that are referred to infrequently). For a few species (e.g. rowi *Apteryx rowi*, kererū *Hemiphaga novaeseelandiae*, hihi *Notiomystis cincta*, and mohua *Mohoua ochrocephala*), the Māori name has been more widely used within recent scientific literature than the equivalent English name that was used in the 2010 Checklist (Okarito brown kiwi, New Zealand pigeon, stitchbird, and yellowhead, respectively), and so the Māori name is presented first. It is anticipated that further English and Māori names will switch positions (either side of the vertical bar) with subsequent revisions of the Checklist, based on the increasing usage of Māori bird names.

We have chosen to place several other widely used Māori bird names to the right of the vertical bar if they are used for more than one species (e.g. kuaka for *Pelecanoides urinatrix* and *Limosa lapponica*, and tieke for *Philesturnus rufusater* and *P. carunculatus*). Māori bird names that apply to two or more species are followed with an asterisk (*), with a footnote immediately below the species or subspecies account listing or summarising other taxa to which the same name also applies.

For species where Māori and English names are identical apart from the use of macrons, the Māori name is presented first, to encourage correct pronunciation (e.g. kākāpō | kakapo *Strigops habroptila*, kākā | kaka *Nestor meridionalis*, and tūī | tui *Prosthemadera novaeseelandiae*). Names that combine Māori and English are treated as if they are English names, without macrons (e.g. North Island kaka *N. m. septentrionalis*, and Chatham Island tui *P. n. chathamensis*).

One of the challenges with presenting Māori bird names is that some species have different names applied to different life stages, or by different iwi (Williams 1917; Wehi *et al.* 2019). The names presented in the main text of the revised Checklist are primarily those that were presented in Appendix 3 of the 2010 Checklist. These were largely based on the compendiums prepared by the Anglican bishop Herbert Williams (1860–1937) in various editions of his *A dictionary of the Maori language* (see Williams 1906, 1917, 1957, 1971). Alternative Māori, Moriori, and English names for New Zealand birds are presented in a new Appendix 3 in the Checklist. If any of these names become the most widely-used variant over time, they will be moved into the main Checklist during subsequent revisions.

Indices

The Index of taxonomic synonyms (pp. 431–478 in the 2010 Checklist) and the Index of current names (pp. 479–496 in the 2010 Checklist) have been deleted, as word-searching functionality in the online version renders any indices redundant.

Symbols and Abbreviations

- Indicates a species (cf. subspecies)
- * Indicates a species (or other taxon) introduced to the New Zealand region
- † Indicates an extinct taxon

NMNZ, Museum of New Zealand Te Papa Tongarewa, Wellington

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

We thank former members of the Checklist Committee Geoff Chambers, Paul Scofield, Jamie Wood, and Trevor Worthy for their assessments and comments on some of the decisions summarised in this document.

SEQUENCE OF ORDERS AND FAMILIES

Dinornithiformes (Moa)

Megalapterygidae (Upland Moa); Emeidae (Emeid Moa); Dinornithidae (Giant Moa)

Apterygiformes (Kiwi)

Apterygidae (Kiwi)

Anseriformes (Duck-like Birds)

Anatidae (Swans, Geese, and Ducks)

Galliformes (Game Birds)

Numididae (Guineafowl); Odontophoridae (American Quails); Phasianidae (Partridges, Quails, Pheasants, and Turkeys)

Podicipediformes (Grebes)

Podicipedidae (Grebes)

Columbiformes (Pigeons and Doves)

Columbidae (Pigeons and Doves)

Cuculiformes (Cuckoos)

Cuculidae (Cuckoos)

Apodiformes (Swifts, Hummingbirds, and Owlet-nightjars)

Aegothelidae (Owlet-nightjars); Apodidae (Swifts)

Gruiformes (Rails and Cranes)

Aptornithidae (Adzebills); Rallidae (Rails, Gallinules, and Coots); Gruidae (Cranes)

Charadriiformes (Waders, Skuas, Gulls, and Terns)

Haematopodidae (Oystercatchers); Recurvirostridae (Stilts and Avocets); Charadriidae (Plovers, Lapwings, and Dotterels); Rostratulidae (Painted Snipes); Scolopacidae (Sandpipers and Snipes); Glareolidae (Couriers and Pratincoles); Stercorariidae (Skuas); Laridae (Noddies, Gulls, and Terns)

Phaethontiformes (Tropicbirds)

Phaethontidae (Tropicbirds)

Sphenisciformes (Penguins)

Spheniscidae (Penguins)

Procellariiformes (Albatrosses, Petrels, and Shearwaters)

Diomedeidae (Albatrosses); Oceanitidae (Southern Storm Petrels); Hydrobatidae (Northern Storm Petrels); Procellariidae (Fulmars, Petrels, Prions, and Shearwaters)

Suliformes (Frigatebirds, Gannets, Darters, and Cormorants)

Fregatidae (Frigatebirds); Sulidae (Gannets and Boobies); Anhingidae (Darters); Phalacrocoracidae (Cormorants and Shags)

Pelecaniformes (Pelicans, Herons, and Ibises)

Pelecanidae (Pelicans); Ardeidae (Herons and Bitterns); Threskiornithidae (Ibises and Spoonbills)

Accipitriformes (Kites, Hawks, and Eagles)

Accipitridae (Kites, Hawks, and Eagles)

Strigiformes (Owls)

Tytonidae (Barn Owls); Strigidae (Typical Owls)

Coraciiformes (Kingfishers, Bee-eaters, and Rollers)

Coraciidae (Rollers); Alcedinidae (Kingfishers)

Falconiformes (Falcons)

Falconidae (Falcons)

Psittaciformes (Cockatoos, Parrots, and Parakeets)

Strigopidae (Kākāpō, and Kākā and Kea); Cacatuidae (Cockatoos); Psittaculidae (Old World Parrots)

Passeriformes (Passerine (Perching) Birds)

Acanthisittidae (New Zealand Wrens); Meliphagidae (Honeyeaters); Acanthizidae (Australasian Warblers); Callaeidae (New Zealand Wattlebirds); Notiomystidae (Hihi); Mohouidae (New Zealand Creepers); Oriolidae (Old World Orioles, Pitohuis, Figbirds, and Piopio); Campephagidae (Cuckoo-shrikes and Trillers); Artamidae (Butcherbirds, Currawongs, and Woodswallows); Rhipiduridae (Fantails); Monarchidae (Monarch Flycatchers); Corvidae (Crows and Jays); Petroicidae (Australasian Robins); Alaudidae (Larks); Acrocephalidae (Reed-warblers); Locustellidae (Grassbirds); Hirundinidae (Swallows and Martins); Zosteropidae (White-eyes); Sturnidae (Starlings and Mynas); Turdidae (Thrushes); Prunellidae (Accentors); Passeridae (Old World Sparrows); Motacillidae (Pipits and Wagtails); Fringillidae (Finches, Euphonias, and Hawai’ian Honeycreepers); Emberizidae (Buntings and New World Sparrows).

SYSTEMATIC ACCOUNT

This section summarises the main changes to species names and other information, compared to the 2010 *Checklist*.

Order †DINORNITHIFORMES: Moa

Family †MEGALAPTERYGIDAE Bunce, Worthy, Phillips, Holdaway, Willerslev, Haile, Shapiro, Scofield, Drummond, Kamp & Cooper: Upland Moa

Megalapterygidae Bunce, Worthy, Phillips, Holdaway, Willerslev, Haile, Shapiro, Scofield, Drummond, Kamp & Cooper, 2009: *Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci. USA* 106: 20647 – Type genus *Megalapteryx* Haast, 1886.

Bunce *et al.* (2009), in the most comprehensive analysis of molecular data to date, confirmed that the monotypic moa genus *Megalapteryx* was sister to all other moa and hence outside of Emeidae, as has been shown repeatedly by analyses of mitochondrial DNA (e.g. Cooper 1997; and references in Bunce *et al.* 2009) and by morphological analyses (Worthy & Holdaway 2002). Bunce *et al.* (2009) acknowledged this by erecting the family Megalapterygidae and showed there is no basis for the subfamilies within Emeidae. Megalapterygidae should be the first family in Dinornithiformes. We no longer recognise the subfamilies Anomalopteryginae Archey or Emeinae Bonaparte.

Family †EMEIDAE Bonaparte: Emeid Moa

Genus †*Euryapteryx* Haast

Euryapteryx Haast, 1874: *Trans. N.Z. Inst.* 6: 427 – Type species (by subsequent designation) *Dinornis gravis* Owen = *Euryapteryx gravis* (Owen).

Euryapteryx curtus (Owen, 1846) and *Euryapteryx gravis* (Owen, 1870) were considered to be full species in the 2010 Checklist (Checklist Committee 2010); however, following a review by Worthy & Scofield (2012), these taxa are now considered to be subspecies of *Euryapteryx curtus*.

➤ †*Euryapteryx curtus* (Owen)

Stout-legged Moa | Moa Hakahaka

†*Euryapteryx curtus curtus* (Owen)

Coastal Moa

Dinornis curtus Owen, 1846: *Proc. Zool. Soc. London* 1846(14): 48 – North Island.

Euryapteryx curtus curtus (Owen); Worthy & Scofield 2012, *N.Z. Journ. Zool.* 39: 131.

†*Euryapteryx curtus gravis* (Owen)

Stout-legged Moa | Moa Hakahaka

Dinornis gravis Owen, 1870: *Trans. Zool. Soc. London* 7(2): 141 – Kakanui River, Otago.

Euryapteryx curtus gravis (Owen); Worthy & Scofield 2012, *N.Z. Journ. Zool.* 39: 131.

Family †DINORNITHIDAE Bonaparte: Giant Moa

Dinornithidae Bonaparte, 1849: *Consp. Syst. Ornith.*: 1 – Type genus *Dinornis* Owen, 1843.

Checklist Committee (2010) wrongly listed the author of Dinornithidae as Bonaparte, 1853. The correct author is Bonaparte (1849).

Order APTERYGIFORMES: Kiwi

The Checklist Committee (2010) placed kiwi in Casuariiformes, as they were then considered sister to cassowaries + emus (Cooper *et al.* 1992, 2001; Cooper 1997; Haddrath & Baker 2001). More recent studies have revealed kiwi to be sister to the extinct elephant birds (Aepyornithidae) from Madagascar (Phillips *et al.* 2010; Mitchell, Llamas *et al.* 2014; Grealy *et al.* 2017; Yonezawa *et al.* 2017), and most authorities recognise seven orders within the Palaeognathae. We follow Cracraft (2013), Dickinson & Remsen (2013), Clements *et al.* (2019), de Moya *et al.* (2019), Urantówka *et al.* (2020), and F. Gill *et al.* (2021) in returning kiwi to their own order (Apterygiformes), which was the recommendation of the Checklist Committee in 1953, 1970, and 1990.

Family APTERYGIDAE G.R. Gray: Kiwi

Genus *Apteryx* Shaw

Apteryx Shaw, 1813: *Nat. Miscell.* 24(286): pls 1057–1060 – Type species (by monotypy) *Apteryx australis* Shaw.

Apternyx Swainson, 1837: *Nat. Hist. Classif. Birds* 1: 119. Unjustified emendation.

Apternix Agassiz, 1846: *Nomen. Zool. Index Univ. Aves* 2. Unjustified emendation.

Pseudapteryx Lydekker, 1891: *Cat. Fossil Birds Brit. Museum*: 218 – Type species (by monotypy) *Pseudapteryx gracilis* Lydekker = *Apteryx owenii* Gould.

Stictapteryx Iredale & Mathews, 1926: *Bull. Brit. Ornith. Club*. 46: 76 – Type species (by original designation) *Apteryx owenii* Gould.

Kiwi Verheyen, 1960: *Bull. Roy. Soc. d'Anvers* 15: 10. Unnecessary *nomen novum* for *Stictapteryx* Iredale & Mathews, 1935.

Kiwi were once throughout the main islands of New Zealand: North, Little Barrier / Hauturu, Great Barrier / Aotea, South, D'Urville, and Stewart / Rakiura Islands; probably originally in all vegetated habitats (Worthy & Holdaway 2002). Increasingly restricted since European settlement to residual forests and adjacent scrub and rough farmland. North Island brown kiwi (*Apteryx mantelli*), but not other forms, have colonised exotic forests (Germano *et al.* 2018).

Since compilation of the 1990 Checklist (Checklist Committee 1990), several studies have been published on the molecular biology of kiwi (e.g. Baker *et al.* 1995; Burbidge *et al.* 2003; Shepherd & Lambert 2008; Shepherd *et al.* 2012; Weir *et al.* 2016; Scofield *et al.* 2021; Shepherd *et al.* 2021; Bemmels *et al.* 2021). Kiwi, particularly brown kiwi, are marked by mostly allopatric genetic diversity in both modern and extinct populations. This is not closely associated with morphological differences, making delineation of species limits difficult (Shepherd & Lambert 2008). For the brown kiwi we follow Holdaway *et al.* (2001) and Tennyson *et al.* (2003) in recognising a North Island species (*A. mantelli*) and two extant South Island species (*A. rowi* and *A. australis* – the latter having two subspecies). Several historical names were not based on localised specimens or adequate descriptions and are unable to be referred to known taxa. These include the following names:

Dromiceius Novae-Zelandiae, Lesson, 1828: *Manuel d'Ornith.* 2: 210 – Bay of Islands (and also *Apteryx australis novae-zelandiae* (Lesson), *A. a. novaezealandiae* [sic] (Lesson), and *Dromiceius novaezealandiae* – see Mathews 1935 and 1937, and Lee & Bruce 2019).

Apteryx major Ellman, 1861: *The Zoologist* 19: 7468 – New Zealand.

Apteryx fusca Potts, 1873: *Trans. N.Z. Inst.* 5: 196 – West Coast. Not *Apteryx fusca* Rowley, 1875.

The authorship of *Apteryx* and *Apteryx australis* is restricted to Shaw, following ICZN (1916), and as supported by Dickinson *et al.* (2006). *Apteryx haastii* Potts, 1872 was used for great spotted kiwi until 2021, when the two syntype specimens for *A. haastii* were shown to be hybrids between *A. owenii* and *A. rowi* (Shepherd *et al.* 2021).

► *Apteryx rowi* Tennyson, Palma, Robertson, Worthy & Gill

Rowi | Okarito Brown Kiwi

Apteryx australis australis Shaw & Nodder [sic]; Checklist Committee 1953, *Checklist N.Z. Birds*: 13. In part.

Apteryx rowii Burbidge, Colbourne, Robertson & Baker, 2003 (April): *Conservation Genetics* 4: 172, 176. *Nomen nudum*.

Apteryx rowii Marsh, 2003 (July 5): *New Zealand Listener* 5: 29. *Nomen nudum*.

Apteryx rowi Tennyson, Palma, Robertson, Worthy & Gill, 2003: *Rec. Auck. Inst. Museum* 40: 57 – South Okarito Forest, South Westland.

Until recently, confined to Okarito, South Island. Brown kiwi have been recorded from Okarito since at least 1867 under the names of roa, rohi, and rowi, and have been recognised as distinct from South Island brown kiwi since the 1950s (for nomenclatural history see Tennyson *et al.* 2003). Genetic studies of mtDNA supported morphological differences and suggested that the Okarito brown kiwi is the sister taxon of the North Island brown kiwi (Baker *et al.* 1995; Burbidge *et al.* 2003; Shepherd & Lambert 2008; Weir *et al.* 2016; Bemmels *et al.* 2021), and not closely related to *A. australis*. Closer relationship to *A. mantelli* than to *A. australis* is also supported by evidence from lice (Palma & Price 2004). Endangered; c. 450 birds remaining in 2018 (Germano *et al.* 2018). Translocated to Mana and Blumine Islands during 2010–12 (Miskelly & Powlesland 2013).

Studies of ancient mtDNA sequences (cytochrome-*b*, control region, derived from bones found in natural deposition sites) indicates that extinct brown kiwi populations north of Okarito on the South Island West Coast (Buller, Takaka Hill) and from Martinborough (Wairarapa) and Lake Poukawa (Hawke's Bay), in the south-east North Island, form a single

clade with extant *A. rowi* that is sister to remaining North Island brown kiwi (Shepherd & Lambert 2008; Weir *et al.* 2016). This suggests that *A. rowi* had a former range from Okarito, up the South Island West Coast and into the southern North Island.

[*Apteryx haastii* Potts]

Potts' Kiwi

Apteryx haastii Potts, 1872 (Jan.): *Ibis* 2 (3rd series): 35 – West Coast. *Nomen protectum* (*fide* Palma *et al.* 2003, *Tuhinga* 14: 7).

Apteryx Haastii Potts, 1872 (May): *Trans. N.Z. Inst.* 4: 204 – Westland.

Apteryx Haasti Potts; Finsch 1872, *Jour. für Ornith.* 20: 271. Unjustified emendation.

Apteryx haasti Potts; Checklist Committee 1953, *Checklist N.Z. Birds*: 13. Unjustified emendation.

Apteryx haastii Potts; Checklist Committee 1980, *Notornis* (*Suppl.*) 27: 4.

Potts' kiwi was named based on two specimens collected in South Westland in 1870–1871 (Potts 1872). These birds and others that look like them are now considered to be hybrids between *rowi* (*Apteryx rowi*) and little spotted kiwi (*A. owenii*) (see Shepherd *et al.* 2021). Potts' kiwi was long confused with great spotted kiwi (*Apteryx maxima*). A pair released on Allports Island, Queen Charlotte Sound have apparently produced at least one surviving offspring (Miskelly & Powlesland 2013; Shepherd *et al.* 2021).]

► *Apteryx australis* Shaw

Scofield *et al.* (2021) demonstrated that the type specimen of *Apteryx australis* must have been collected on Stewart Island / Stewart Island / Rakiura. This means that the Stewart Island brown kiwi (formerly known as *A. australis lawryi*) becomes the nominate subspecies. There are no scientific names available for the brown kiwi found in Fiordland and near Haast. The recommended names and text for these taxa are:

► *Apteryx australis* Shaw

Southern Brown Kiwi | Tokoeka

Southern brown kiwi was formerly abundant throughout Stewart Island / Rakiura and at low elevations in southern and south-eastern South Island; however, its South Island range had contracted to Fiordland by 1893 (Marchant & Higgins 1990; Weir *et al.* 2016; Scofield *et al.* 2021). Several studies combining modern and ancient DNA sequences have demonstrated that populations of *A. australis* at Haast, Fiordland, and Stewart Island, and extinct populations in Southland and east of the Southern Alps / Kā Tiritiri o te Moana formed a single clade with deep diversity (Shepherd & Lambert 2008; Weir *et al.* 2016; Scofield *et al.* 2021; Undin *et al.* 2021). These include the populations of “large” kiwi from eastern areas that Worthy (1997, 1998b) found to have significantly smaller and stouter leg bones than extant *A. australis*. The Stewart Island / Rakiura birds form a monophyletic clade divergent from South Island birds (Burbidge *et al.* 2003; Shepherd & Lambert 2008; Weir *et al.* 2016; Scofield *et al.* 2021; Bemmels *et al.* 2021), supporting the subspecies status attributed them below. Also present on Secretary, Resolution, Cooper, and Long Islands, Fiordland, with introduced populations on Parrot and Indian Islands, Dusky Sound (Miskelly & Powlesland 2013). Introduced to Kapiti Island where the stock is now hybrid between *A. australis* and *A. mantelli* (Checklist Committee 1990).

Apteryx australis subsp.

South Island Brown Kiwi | Tokoeka

Apteryx australis; Hutton 1871, *Cat. Birds N.Z.*: 23. Not *Apteryx australis* Shaw.

Apteryx australis australis Shaw & Nodder [sic]; Checklist Committee 1953, *Checklist N.Z. Birds*: 13. Not *Apteryx australis* Shaw.

Apteryx “eastern South Is.”; Holdaway *et al.* 2001, *New Zealand Journ. Zool.* 28: 125.

Apteryx “East South Is.”; Holdaway *et al.* 2001, *New Zealand Journ. Zool.* 28: 175.

Apteryx (Eastern South Island)”; Holdaway *et al.* 2001, *New Zealand Journ. Zool.* 28: 185.

Apteryx sp. Eastern Kiwi; Worthy & Holdaway 2002, *Lost World of Moa*: 220.

Apteryx australis “Haast”; Miskelly *et al.* 2008, *Notornis* 55: 126.

Apteryx australis (Northern Fiordland); Miskelly *et al.* 2008, *Notornis* 55: 127.

Apteryx australis australis; Checklist Committee 2010, *Checklist N.Z. Birds*: 21. Not *Apteryx australis* Shaw.

Apteryx australis “northern Fiordland”; Robertson *et al.* 2013, *Conservation status New Zealand birds*, 2012: 2.

Apteryx australis “northern”; Robertson *et al.* 2017, *Conservation status New Zealand birds*, 2016: 5.

Apteryx australis “southern Fiordland”; Robertson *et al.* 2021, *Conservation status Aotearoa New Zealand birds*, 2021: 6.

Apteryx australis “Northern Fiordland”; Robertson *et al.* 2021, *Conservation status Aotearoa New Zealand birds*, 2021: 23.

South Island; Haast River to Arawata River, and Fiordland (C. Robertson *et al.* 2007). Disjunct populations, the result of postulated recent and ongoing population declines, are treated as distinct management units by the Department of Conservation (Burbidge *et al.* 2003; Weir *et al.* 2016; Germano *et al.* 2018; Bemmels *et al.* 2021; Scofield *et al.* 2021; Shepherd *et al.* 2021; Undin *et al.* 2021). Holocene remains widespread throughout the South Island (Worthy 1997, 1998b; Worthy & Holdaway 2002).

Apteryx australis australis Shaw

Stewart Island Brown Kiwi | Rakiura Tokoeka

Apteryx australis Shaw, 1813: *Nat. Miscell.* 24(286): pls 1057–1060 – New Zealand, restricted to Stewart Island / Rakiura (*fide* Scofield *et al.* 2021, *Cons. Gen.* doi: 10.1007/s10592-021-01349-y: 5).

Apterynx australis (Shaw); Swainson 1837, in D. Lardner, *The Cabinet Cyclopaedia* 2(92): 346. Unjustified emendation.

Apteryx maxima Buller, 1891: *Trans. N.Z. Inst.* 24: 602 – Stewart Island. Junior primary homonym of *Apteryx maxima* Sclater & Hochstetter, 1861.

Apteryx lawryi Rothschild, 1893: *Bull. Br. Ornith. Club* 1: 61 – Stewart Island.

Apteryx Australis Shaw; Mathews 1930, *Emu* 29: 278.

Apteryx australis lawryi Rothschild; Checklist Committee 1953, *Checklist N.Z. Birds*: 13.

Stewart Island / Rakiura (main island, and Ulva Island in Paterson Inlet / Whaka a Te Wera), in forest and scrub; widespread and locally common. Several midden records.

► *Apteryx owenii* Gould

Little Spotted Kiwi | Kiwi Pukupuku

Add text at end:

See comments under *rowi* (*A. rowi*) regarding the status of Potts' kiwi (*A. haastii*).

► *Apteryx maxima* Sclater & Hochstetter

Great Spotted Kiwi | Roroa

Apteryx maxima Sclater & Hochstetter, 1861: *The Natural History Review*: 506 – near Charleston, West Coast.

Apteryx maxima Verreaux [sic]; Anon. 1870, *Cat. Colonial Mus.*: 74.

Apteryx maxima Hutton, 1871: *Cat. Birds N.Z.*: 23, 75 – Westland. Junior primary homonym and junior synonym of *Apteryx maxima* Sclater & Hochstetter, 1861.

Apteryx maximus Verreaux [sic]; Rothschild 1893, *Ibis* 5 (6th series): 576.

Apteryx grandis Grieve, 1913: *Proc. Roy. Phys. Soc. Edinburgh* 19: 63 – South Island.

Apteryx owenii maxima Hutton; Mathews 1935, *Bull. Br. Ornith. Club* 55: 180.

Apteryx maxima Sclater & Hochstetter, 1861; Palma, Worthy & Tennyson 2003, *Tuhinga* 14: 7. As *nomen oblitum*.

Apteryx haastii of authors. Not *Apteryx haastii* Potts, 1872: *Ibis* 2 (3rd series): 35 – West Coast (= hybrid between *A. owenii* and *A. rowi*; Shepherd *et al.* 2021).

Apteryx maxima Sclater & Hochstetter, 1861; Shepherd, Tennyson, Robertson, Colbourne & Ramstad 2021, *Avian Research* 12:24: 11. Resurrected from *nomen oblitum*.

North-western South Island (C. Robertson *et al.* 2007). Extends across the divide (in high altitude beech forest) at various points between Arthur's Pass and the Hope River (Germano *et al.* 2018). Holocene fossils are largely indeterminate, as bones are generally morphologically inseparable from those of *Apteryx australis* (e.g. Worthy 1997), but remains likely to be this species are known in high-altitude sites in north-west Nelson (Mount Owen, Mount Arthur) and in sites in the Honeycomb Hill cave system, Oparara. Some bones have been identified as *A. maxima* by DNA-typing (Shepherd & Lambert 2008), but this method is limited to relatively few well-preserved specimens. Not recorded from the North Island. Nineteen individuals from Gouland Downs were introduced to Hauturu / Little Barrier Island in 1915 in a failed bid to establish an island population (Oliver 1955). More recently, translocated to St Arnaud, Nelson Lakes in 2004–06, Flora Saddle, Mt Arthur in 2010–16, and Nina Valley, Lewis Pass in 2011–12 (Miskelly & Powlesland 2013; Toy & Toy 2020).

Until 2021, great spotted kiwi were known by the species name *Apteryx haastii*; however, the two syntype specimens of *Apteryx haastii* are hybrids between *A. owenii* and *A. rowi* (Shepherd *et al.* 2021, and see under *A. rowi* above). *Apteryx maxima* was made a *nomen oblitum* by Palma *et al.* (2003) because at that time *Apteryx haastii* and *Apteryx maxima* were considered to be synonyms. However, as they clearly are not synonyms (Shepherd *et al.* 2021), Article 23.11 of the ICBN Code (1999) does not apply. From accounts in Grieve (1913) it is clear that in the late 1880s *Apteryx maxima* was called *A. grandis* by various commercial collectors, notably James Dall.

Order ANSERIFORMES: Duck-like Birds

Family ANATIDAE Leach: Swans, Geese, and Ducks

Subfamily ANSERINAE Vigors: Swans and Geese

Anserina Vigors, 1825: *Zoological Journal* 2: 404 – Type genus *Anser* Brisson, 1760.

Genus *Cygnus* Bechstein

► †*Cygnus sumnerensis* (Forbes)

New Zealand Swan | Matapu

The 2010 Checklist presented *Cygnus sumnerensis* (Forbes, 1890) and *C. chathamicus* Oliver 1955 as junior synonyms of *C. atratus* (Latham, 1790). However, Rawlence, Kardamaki *et al.* (2017) used mitochondrial DNA and skeletal measurements to show that swan bones from New Zealand and the Chatham Islands were distinct from those of *C. atratus*, and that Chatham Island bones (including the holotype of *C. chathamicus*) differed sufficiently (both genetically and morphologically) from New Zealand samples that they should be recognised as a separate subspecies. We follow Rawlence, Kardamaki *et al.* (2017) in reinstating *Cygnus sumnerensis* as a full species, with two subspecies as follows:

†*Cygnus sumnerensis sumnerensis* (Forbes)**New Zealand Swan | Matapu**

Chenopis sumnerensis Forbes, 1890: *Nature* (January 2) 41(1053): 209; *Ibis* 2 (6th series): 264 – Sumner, Canterbury.

Cygnus sumnerensis sumnerensis (Forbes); Rawlence, Kardamaki *et al.* (2017), *Proc. Roy. Soc. B* 284: 20170876: 3.

†*Cygnus sumnerensis chathamicus* Oliver**Chatham Island Swan | Poūwa**

Cygnus chathamicus Oliver, 1955: *New Zealand Birds*, 2nd edition: 603 – Chatham Islands.

Cygnus sumnerensis chathamicus Oliver; Rawlence, Kardamaki *et al.* (2017), *Proc. Roy. Soc. B* 284: 20170876: 3.

This species has been inserted after *Cygnus atratus*.

Subfamily MERGINAE Rafinesque: Sea Ducks

Genus ***Mergus*** Linnaeus➤ †*Mergus milleneri* Williams & Tennyson**Chatham Island Merganser**

Mergus australis Hombron & Jacquinot, 1841: Checklist Committee (2010) *Checklist Birds N.Z.*: 40. In part.

Mergus milleneri Williams & Tennyson, 2014: *Wildfowl* 64: 22 – Chatham Island.

Known only from Holocene fossil remains on Chatham Island (Williams *et al.* 2014, 2015).

This species has been inserted before *Mergus australis*.

➤ †*Mergus australis* Hombron & Jacquinot**Auckland Island Merganser | Miweka**

Mergus australis Hombron & Jacquinot, 1841: *Ann. Sci. Nat., Zool. Paris, 2nd series* 16: 320 – Auckland Islands, restricted to Port Ross (*fide* Miskelly, Elliott *et al.* 2020, *Notornis* 67: 65).

The recommended English name for *Mergus australis* is Auckland Island merganser (cf. New Zealand merganser *sensu* Checklist Committee 2010). This follows the naming of the Chatham Island merganser (*M. milleneri*) in 2014, and uncertainty as to the identity of *Mergus* bones found on the North Island, South Island, and Stewart Island / Rakiura.

Subfamily ANATINAE Leach: Ducks

Genus ***Anas*** Linnaeus

Synonyms deleted:

Spatula Boie, 1822: *Isis von Oken*, Heft 10: col. 564 – Type species (by monotypy) *Anas clypeata* Linnaeus.

Rhynchospis Stephens, 1824: *in Shaw, General Zool.* 12(2): 114 – Type species (by subsequent designation) *Anas clypeata* Linnaeus.

Rhynchoplatus Berthold, 1827: *in Latreille, Nat. Fam. Thierreich*: 84 – Type species (by monotypy) *Anas clypeata* Linnaeus.

Clypeata Lesson, 1828: *Manuel d'Ornith.* 2: 416 – Type species (by original designation) *Anas clypeata* Linnaeus.

Spathulea J.D.D. Fleming, 1828: *Hist. Brit. Anim.* 123 – Type species (by monotypy) *Anas clypeata* Linnaeus.

Synonym added:

Pachyanas Oliver, 1955: *New Zealand Birds*, 2nd edition: 599 – Type species (by original designation) *Pachyanas chathamica* Oliver = *Anas chathamica* (Oliver).

Chatham Island Duck➤ †*Anas chathamica* (Oliver)

Pachyanas chathamica Oliver, 1955: *New Zealand Birds*, 2nd edition: 599 – Chatham Islands.

Anas chathamica (Oliver); Mitchell *et al.* 2014, *Mol. Phyl. Evol.* 70: 427.

Mitchell, Wood *et al.* (2014) used mitochondrial DNA and osteological characters to show that the Chatham Island duck is nested within *Anas*, and is most closely related to the New Zealand/subantarctic ‘brown teals’. The monotypic genus *Pachyanas* Oliver, 1955, therefore becomes a junior synonym of *Anas* Linnaeus, 1758, and the Chatham Island duck should be referred to as *Anas chathamica*.

This species has been inserted before *Anas chlorotis*.

Genus ***Spatula*** Boie

Spatula Boie, 1822: *Isis von Oken*, Heft 5: col. 564 – Type species (by monotypy) *Anas clypeata* Linnaeus = *Spatula clypeata* (Linnaeus).

Rhynchospis Stephens, 1824: *in Shaw, General Zool.* 12(2): 114 – Type species (by subsequent designation) *Anas clypeata* Linnaeus = *Spatula clypeata* (Linnaeus).

Rhynchoplatus Berthold, 1827: *in Latreille, Nat. Fam. Thierreich*: 84 – Type species (by monotypy) *Anas clypeata* Linnaeus = *Spatula clypeata* (Linnaeus).

Clypeata Lesson, 1828: *Manuel d'Ornith.* 2: 416 – Type species (by original designation) *Anas clypeata* Linnaeus = *Spatula clypeata* (Linnaeus).

Spathulea J.D.D. Fleming, 1828: *Hist. Brit. Anim.* 123 – Type species (by monotypy) *Anas clypeata* Linnaeus = *Spatula clypeata* (Linnaeus).

We follow Gonzales *et al.* (2009) and Dickinson & Remsen (2013) in placing shovanders in the genus *Spatula* (cf. *Anas* used in previous New Zealand checklists).

This genus has been inserted after *Anas*.

► ***Spatula rhynchos*** (Latham)

Australasian Shoveler | Kuruwhengi

Anas rhynchos Latham, 1801: *Index Ornith. Suppl.*: lxx – New South Wales, Australia.

Rhynchaspis rhynchos (Latham): Stephens 1824, in Shaw, *General Zool.* 12(2): 123.

Spatula rhynchos (Latham); G.R. Gray 1843, in E. Dieffenbach, *Travels in N.Z.* 2: 198.

Spatula variegata Gould, 1856: *Proc. Zool. Soc. London* 1856 (24): 95 – New Zealand.

Anas rhynchotes Latham; Ellman 1861, *Zoologist* 19: 7471. Unjustified emendation.

Rhynchaspis variegata (Gould); Buller 1888 (Dec.), *History of the Birds of N.Z.*, 2nd edition 2 (part 12): 269.

Spatula rhynchos (Latham); Mathews 1912, *Novit. Zool.* 18(3): 238.

Spatula rhynchos variegata (Gould); Mathews & Iredale 1913, *Ibis* 1 (10th series): 409.

Spatula rhynchos dydimus Mathews, 1916: *Austral Avian Rec.* 3: 56 – south-western Australia.

Spatula [sic] *rhynchos* (Latham); Oliver 1930, *New Zealand Birds*, 1st edition: 224. Misspelling.

Anas rhynchos variegata (Gould); Checklist Committee 1953, *Checklist N.Z. Birds*: 35.

Anas rhynchos rhynchos Latham; Condon 1975, *Checklist Birds Australia* 1: 71.

Anas rhynchos Latham; Marchant & Higgins 1990, *HANZAB* 1: 1340.

► ***Spatula clypeata*** (Linnaeus)

Northern Shoveler

Anas clypeata Linnaeus, 1758: *Syst. Nat.*, 10th edition 1: 124 – coasts of Europe, restricted to southern Sweden (*fide* Linnaeus 1761, *Fauna Svecica*, 2nd edition: 42).

Spatula clypeata (Linnaeus); Boie 1822: *Isis von Oken*, Heft 10: col. 564.

Anas clypeata Linnaeus; Checklist Committee 1970, *Annot. Checklist Birds N.Z.*: 38.

Tribe AYTHYINI Delacour & Mayr: Scaup

The common name adopted for the tribe replaces “Scaup and Allies” used by Checklist Committee (2010).

Order GALLIFORMES: Game Birds

The common name adopted for the order replaces “Game Birds and Allies” used by Checklist Committee (2010). We follow the classification for Galliformes recommended by Crowe *et al.* (2006) and Ksepka (2009).

Family *NUMIDIDAE Reichenbach: Guineafowl

Numidinae Reichenbach, 1850: *Avium Syst. Nat.*: 26 – Type genus *Numida* Linnaeus, 1766.

Family *ODONTOPHORIDAE Gould: American Quails

Odontophorinae Gould, 1844: *Monograph Odontophorinae* 1: 1 – Type genus *Odontophorus* Vieillot, 1816.

Family PHASIANIDAE Vigors: Partridges, Quails, Pheasants, and Turkeys

Phasianidae Vigors, 1825: *Zoological Journal* 2: 402 – Type genus *Phasianus* Linnaeus, 1758.

Subfamily COTURNICINAE Bonaparte: Old World Quails

Coturnicinae Bonaparte, 1853: *Compt. Rend. Séa. Acad. Sci., Paris* 37(18): 646 – Type genus *Coturnix* Garsault, 1764.

Includes genera *Synoicus*, *Coturnix*, and *Alectoris*. Seabrook-Davison *et al.* (2009) and Kimball *et al.* (2011) revealed the genus *Coturnix* to be paraphyletic. We follow Dickinson & Remsen (2013), Clements *et al.* (2019), and F. Gill *et al.* (2021) in resurrecting the genus *Synoicus* for brown quail (*S. ypsilophorus*) and blue-breasted quail (*S. chinensis chinensis*) (see Appendix 2 for the latter).

Genus **Synoicus* Gould

Synoicus Gould, 1843: *Birds of Australia* 5: pl. 89 and text – Type species (by monotypy) *Perdix australis* Latham = *Coturnix ypsilophora australis* (Latham).

Synaecus Agassiz, 1846: *Nomen. Zool. Index Univ. Aves* 2. Unjustified emendation.

Ypsilophorus Mathews, 1912: *Austral Avian Rec.* 1: 112. Unnecessary *nomen novum* for *Synoicus* Gould, 1843, which is not a junior homonym of *Synoicum* Phipps, 1774.

➤ * <i>Synoicus ypsilophorus</i> (Bosc)	Brown Quail
<i>Coturnix ypsilophorus</i> Bosc, 1792: <i>Journ. d'Hist. Natur.</i> 2: 297, pl. 39 – no locality = Tasmania (<i>fide</i> Mathews 1913, <i>List Birds Australia</i> : 7).	
<i>Synoicus ypsilophorus</i> (Bosc); Checklist Committee 1953, <i>Checklist N.Z. Birds</i> : 37.	
Indonesia, New Guinea, Australia (north, south-west, east, and Tasmania) (Marchant & Higgins 1993).	
* <i>Synoicus ypsilophorus australis</i> (Latham)	Australian Brown Quail Kuera
<i>Perdix australis</i> Latham, 1801: <i>Index Ornith. Suppl.</i> : lxii – New South Wales, Australia.	
<i>Synoicus australis</i> (Latham); Buller 1888, <i>History of the Birds of N.Z.</i> , 2nd edition 1: 226.	
<i>Synaecus australis</i> Temminck [sic]; Hamilton 1909, <i>Hand-list birds New Zealand</i> : 18.	
<i>Synoicus ypsilophorus</i> ; Checklist Committee 1953, <i>Checklist N.Z. Birds</i> : 37. Not <i>Coturnix ypsilophorus</i> Bosc, 1792.	
<i>Coturnix ypsilophora australis</i> (Latham); Marchant & Higgins 1993, <i>HANZAB</i> 2: 404.	
<i>Synoicus ypsilophorus australis</i> (Latham); Dickinson & Remsen 2013, <i>Howard & Moore Complete Checklist Birds World</i> , 4th edition, 1: 34.	

Genus **Alectoris* Kaup

➤ <i>Alectoris chukar</i> (J.E. Gray)	Chukor
The Checklist Committee debated whether to change the spelling of the common name from chukor (as used widely in New Zealand, e.g. Checklist Committee 1953, 2010) to chukar (as used by many other authorities, e.g. Williams 1951, Dickinson & Remsen 2013) and concluded that there was insufficient support to change the status quo.	

Subfamily *PAVONINAE Rafinesque: Peafowls

Pavosia Rafinesque, 1815: *Analyse de la Nature*: 70 – Type genus *Pavo* Linnaeus, 1758.

Subfamily *MELEAGRIDINAE G.R. Gray: Turkeys

Meleagridinae G.R. Gray, 1840: *List Gen. Birds* (1st edition): 60 – Type genus *Meleagris* Linnaeus, 1758.

Subfamily *PHASIANINAE Vigors: Pheasants and Monals

Phasianidae Vigors, 1825: *Zoological Journal* 2: 402 – Type genus *Phasianus* Linnaeus, 1758.

Order COLUMBIIFORMES: Pigeons and Doves

Family COLUMBIDAE Illiger: Pigeons and Doves

We follow Pereira *et al.* (2007), Dickinson & Remsen (2013), and Nowak *et al.* (2019) in recognising three subfamilies of pigeons, two of which occur in New Zealand. Genus sequence follows Dickinson & Remsen (2013), Clements *et al.* (2019), Handbook of the Birds of the World and BirdLife International (2020), and F. Gill *et al.* (2021).

Subfamily COLUMBINAE Illiger: Typical Pigeons

Columbini Illiger, 1811: *Prodromus Syst. Mamm. Avium*: 243 – Type genus *Columba* Linnaeus, 1758.

Genera *Columba* and *Streptopelia*.

Genus **Streptopelia* Bonaparte

➤ * <i>Streptopelia risoria</i> (Linnaeus)	Barbary Dove
--	---------------------

Text added: The name *S. risoria* has priority over *S. roseogrisea* (ICZN 2008).

Subfamily RAPHINAE Wetmore: Fruit Doves

Raphidae Wetmore, 1930: *Proc. U.S. Nat. Mus.* 76(24): 5 – Type genus *Raphus* Brisson, 1760.

Genera *Ptilinopus*, *Hemiphaga*, *Deliaphaps*, and *Rupephaps*.

New vagrant genus and species added:

Genus **Ptilinopus** Swainson

Ptilinopus Swainson, 1825: *Zoological Journal* 1: 473 – Type species (by monotypy) *Ptilinopus purpuratus* var. *regina* Swainson.
Lamprotreron Bonaparte, 1854: *Consp. Gen. Avium* 2: 17 – Type species (by original designation) *Columba superba* Temminck.
Reginopus Mathews, 1913: *Austral Avian Rec.* 2: 73 – Type species (by original designation) *Ptilinopus ewingii* Gould.

► **Ptilinopus regina** Swainson

Rose-crowned Fruit-dove

Ptilinopus purpuratus var. *regina* Swainson, 1825: *Zoological Journal* 1: 474 – Australasia, restricted to New South Wales, Australia (*fide* Condon 1975, *Checklist Birds Australia* 1: 162).
Ptilinopus swainsonii Gould, 1842: *Birds of Australia* 5: text to pl. 55 – Clarence River, New South Wales, Australia.
Ptilinopus regina yorki Mathews, 1922: *Austral Avian Rec.* 5: 1 – Cape York, Queensland, Australia.
Ptilinopus regina regina Swainson; Condon 1975, *Checklist Birds Australia* 1: 162.
Ptilinopus regina Swainson; Hermes *et al.* 1986, *Notornis* 33: 149.
Ptilinopus (Ptilinopus) regina regina Swainson; Schodde 1997, *Zool. Cat. Australia* 37.2: 57.

Australia: islands in Torres Strait, and from Cape York to northern New South Wales, including islands off east Queensland (Higgins & Davies 1996). Migratory or nomadic. One record from New Zealand (Taranaki Bight, Aug. 2019; Miskelly 2020). One record from Norfolk Island (Hermes *et al.* 1986).

Genus **Hemiphaga** Bonaparte

Text added: Endemic to the New Zealand region, plus Norfolk Island. Two extant New Zealand species (*H. novaeseelandiae* and *H. chathamensis*). The Norfolk Island pigeon (*H. spadicea*) became extinct about 1839 (N. Taylor 1966; Checklist Committee 2010).

Order CUCULIFORMES: Cuckoos

Suborder CUCULI: Cuckoos

Family CUCULIDAE Leach: Cuckoos

Subfamily CUCULINAE Leach: Parasitic Cuckoos

Genus **Cacomantis** Statius Müller

We follow Erritzøe *et al.* (2012), Clements *et al.* (2019), and F. Gill *et al.* (2021) in placing pallid cuckoo in the genus *Cacomantis*.

► **Cacomantis pallidus** (Latham)

Pallid Cuckoo

Columba pallida Latham, 1801: *Index Ornith. Suppl.*: lx – “Nouvelle-Hollande”, restricted to New South Wales, Australia (*fide* Mason 1997, *Zool. Cat. Australia* 37.2: 228).
Cuculus pallidus (Latham); Checklist Committee 1953, *Checklist N.Z. Birds*: 55.
Cuculus (Heteroscenes) pallidus (Latham); Mason 1997, *Zool. Cat. Australia* 37.2: 228.
Cacomantis pallidus (Latham); Christidis & Boles, *Syst. Taxon. Australian Birds* 2008: 28.
Heteroscenes pallidus (Latham); Dickinson & Remsen 2013, *Howard & Moore Complete Checklist Birds World*, 4th edition, 1: 147.

This species has been inserted before *Cacomantis flabelliformis*.

Genus **Eudynamys** Vigors & Horsfield

Payne (2005) recognised *Urodynamis* as a monotypic genus for the long-tailed cuckoo, and in an analysis of mitochondrial gene sequences found that *Urodynamis* was closer to *Scythrops* than to *Eudynamys scolopacea* (Linnaeus, 1758) (Sorenson & Payne 2005). A subsequent PhD study using 6 nuclear and 1 mitochondrial loci also supported a separate genus for long-tailed cuckoo, but found *Eudynamys* to be sister to *Scythrops* (Burg 2018). Given the morphological similarity between long-tailed cuckoo and koels (*Eudynamys* spp.), we have retained long-tailed cuckoo in *Eudynamys* pending more detailed genetic comparisons.

Order **GRUIFORMES**: Rails and Cranes

The common name adopted for the order replaces “Rails, Cranes and Allies” used by Checklist Committee (2010).

Family **APTORNITHIDAE** Bonaparte: Adzebills

Text added: This basal relationship was confirmed by more comprehensive mtDNA analyses by Lanfear *et al.* (2011) and Boast *et al.* (2019), with the latter study revealing *Aptornis* as sister to Sarothruridae (flufftails and wood rails) from Madagascar and Africa, and that the two groups split about 40 million years ago. Aptornithidae + Sarothruridae were sister to finfoots and sungrebe (Heliornithidae), with this combined clade sister to Rallidae (Boast *et al.* 2019).

Genus **†Aptornis** G.A. Mantell

Text added: The two recent species are estimated to have separated 2.3–0.2 million years ago (Boast *et al.* 2019).

Family **RALLIDAE** Rafinesque: Rails, Gallinules, and Coots

Subfamily **RALLINAE** Rafinesque: Rails, Gallinules, and Coots

We follow the recommendation of Dickinson & Remsen (2013) and Chesser *et al.* (2016), based on the analyses of Slikas *et al.* (2002) and Garcia-R *et al.* (2014), to use the genus *Zapornia* for spotless crake and Baillon’s crake (marsh crake). A restricted *Porzana* is retained for *P. fluminea*. *Zapornia* should follow *Porzana*.

We follow the recommendation of Christidis & Boles (2008), Dickinson & Remsen (2013), and Sangster *et al.* (2015) to use the genus *Tribonyx* rather than *Gallinula* (cf. Checklist Committee 2010) for the black-tailed native-hen. Sangster *et al.* (2015) used molecular phylogenetics to demonstrate that *Gallinula sensu lato* was not monophyletic, and that the black-tailed native-hen (*T. ventralis*) and Tasmanian native-hen (*T. mortierii*) were not closely related to other living species of *Gallinula*. This supported the morphological phylogeny proposed by Livezy (1998), who also placed these two species in *Tribonyx*. *Tribonyx* should be placed following *Gallinula*.

Genus **Lewinia** G.R. Gray

Text replaced with: An adult Lewin’s rail (*Lewinia pectoralis*) supposedly from the Auckland Islands /Maukahuka is held by the American Museum of Natural History (Oliver 1955: 351). Its identity and provenance is discussed by Mathews & Iredale (1913), Greenway (1958), Falla (1967), Elliott *et al.* (1991), and Miskelly & Taylor (2020), with most authors concluding that it was unlikely that the specimen was from the Auckland Islands or New Zealand.

➤ ***Lewinia muelleri* (Rothschild)** **Auckland Island Rail**

Text replaced with: Auckland Islands / Maukahuka, surviving on Adams and Disappointment Islands (Miskelly *et al.* 2020; Elliott *et al.* 2020; Walker *et al.* 2020). Bones have been found in sand dunes on Enderby Island (Tennyson 2020). The type specimen is presumed to have been destroyed during World War II (Falla 1967). Previously listed as *Rallus pectoralis muelleri* (e.g. Checklist Committee 1990) or *Dryolimnas pectoralis muelleri* (e.g. Marchant & Higgins 1993); we follow Sibley & Monroe (1990) and B. Taylor & van Perlo (1998) in placing this taxon in *Lewinia*.

Genus **Porzana** Vieillot

Porzana Vieillot, 1816: *Analyse Nouv. Ornith. Elem.*: 61 – Type species (by monotypy and tautonymy) “Marouette” of Buffon = *Porzana porzana* (Linnaeus).

➤ ***Porzana fluminea* Gould** **Australian Crake**

Synonym added: *Porzana fluminea* Gould; Dickinson & Remsen 2013, *Howard & Moore Complete Checklist Birds World*, 4th edition, 1: 158.

Genus **Zapornia** Leach

Zapornia Leach, 1816: *Syst. Cat. Specimens Mamm. Birds Brit. Museum*: 34. – Type species (by monotypy) *Zapornia minuta* Leach, 1816 = *Zapornia parva* (Scopoli).

Zaporina J.R. Forster, 1827: *Pocket Encycl. Nat. Phen.*: 418. Unjustified emendation.

Phalaridion Kaup, 1829: *Skizz. Entw.-Gesch. Eur. Thierw.*: 173 – Type species (by subsequent designation) *Rallus parvus* Scopoli = *Zapornia parva* (Scopoli).

Rallites Pucheran, 1845: *Revue Zool.*: 277 – Type species (by subsequent designation) *Rallus parvus* Scopoli = *Zapornia parva* (Scopoli).

Porzanoidea Mathews, 1912: *Austral Avian Rec.* 1: 117 – Type species (by subsequent designation) *Gallinula immaculata* Swainson = *Zapornia tabuensis* (Gmelin).

Schoenocrex Roberts, 1922: *Ann. Transv. Museum* 8: 197 – Type species (by original designation) *Rallus pusillus* Pallas = *Zapornia pusilla* (Pallas).

➤ **Zapornia tabuensis** (Gmelin)**Spotless Crake | Pūweto****Zapornia tabuensis tabuensis** (Gmelin)**Spotless Crake | Pūweto**

Synonym added: *Zapornia tabuensis tabuensis* (Gmelin); Dickinson & Remsen 2013, *Howard & Moore Complete Checklist Birds World*, 4th edition, 1: 159.

➤ **Zapornia pusilla** (Pallas)**Baillon's Crake****Zapornia pusilla affinis** (G.R. Gray)**Marsh Crake | Kotoreke**

Synonym added: *Zapornia pusilla affinis* (G.R. Gray); Dickinson & Remsen 2013, *Howard & Moore Complete Checklist Birds World*, 4th edition, 1: 158.

Genus Gallinula Brisson

Gallinula Brisson, 1760: *Ornithologie* 1: 50 and 6: 2 – Type species (by tautomy) *Gallinula* Brisson = *Gallinula chloropus* (Linnaeus).

Hydrogallina La Cépède, 1799: *Tableaux Method. Mamm. Oiseaux*: 19 – Type species (by subsequent designation) *Fulica chloropus* Linnaeus = *Gallinula chloropus* (Linnaeus).

Stagnicola Brehm, 1831: *Handb. Naturgesch. Vög. Deutschl.*: 702 – Type species (by subsequent designation) *Fulica chloropus* Linnaeus = *Gallinula chloropus* (Linnaeus).

➤ **Gallinula chloropus** (Linnaeus)**Common Moorhen**

Fulica Chloropus Linnaeus, 1758: *Syst. Nat., 10th edition* 1(1): 152. Based on “*Gallinula Chloropus*” of Albin, 1738 – Europe, restricted to England (*fide* Taylor & van Perlo 1998, *Rails*: 492).

Gallinula chloropus indica Blyth, 1842: *Journ. Asiatic Soc. Bengal* 11: 887 – Calcutta, India.

Gallinula chloropus indica Blyth; Turbott & Scarlett 1964, *Notornis* 11: 107.

Gallinula chloropus (Linnaeus); Taylor & van Perlo 1998, *Rails*: 492.

➤ **Gallinula tenebrosa** Gould**Dusky Moorhen**

Gallinula tenebrosa Gould, 1846: *Birds of Australia* 6, pl. 73 – New South Wales and South Australia, Australia.

Gallinula tenebrosa magnirostris Mathews, 1912: *Novit. Zool.* 18(3): 195 – Guildford, Western Australia.

Gallinula tenebrosa subfrontata Mathews, 1912: *Novit. Zool.* 18(3): 195 – Richmond River, New South Wales, Australia.

Gallinula tenebrosa Gould; Checklist Committee 1990, *Checklist Birds N.Z.*: 123.

Genus Tribonyx du Bus de Gisignies

Tribonyx du Bus de Gisignies, 1840 (April): *Bull. Acad. Roy. Sci. Bruxelles* 7(1): 212 – Type species (by monotypy) *Tribonyx mortierii* du Bus de Gisignies.

Brachyptrallus Lafresnaye, 1840 (August): *Rev. de Zool., Paris*: 231 – Type species (by monotypy) *Brachyptrallus ralloides* Lafresnaye = *Tribonyx mortierii* du Bus de Gisignies.

Microtribonyx Sharpe, 1893: *Bull. Brit. Ornith. Club* 1: 29 – Type species (by original designation) *Microtribonyx ventralis* (Gould) = *Tribonyx ventralis* (Gould).

Pyramida Oliver, 1955: *New Zealand Birds*, 2nd edition: 595 – Type species (by monotypy) *Rallus hodgeni* Scarlett = *Tribonyx hodgenorum* (Scarlett).

Pyramidia Oliver, 1955: *New Zealand Birds*, 2nd edition: 596 – Misspelling.

➤ **Tribonyx ventralis** (Gould)**Black-tailed Native-hen**

Gallinula ventralis Gould, 1837: *Proc. Zool. Soc. London* 1836 (4): 85 – Swan River, Western Australia.

Microtribonyx ventralis (Gould); Sharpe 1893, *Bull. Brit. Ornith. Club* 1: 29.

Tribonyx ventralis whitei Mathews, 1912: *Novit. Zool.* 18(3): 194 – Nevertire, north-western New South Wales, Australia.

Tribonyx ventralis territorii Mathews, 1912: *Novit. Zool.* 18(3): 195 – Alexandria, Northern Territory, Australia.

Tribonyx ventralis (Gould); Checklist Committee 1953, *Checklist N.Z. Birds*: 41.

Gallinula ventralis Gould; Checklist Committee 1990, *Checklist Birds N.Z.*: 123.

➤ †**Tribonyx hodgenorum** (Scarlett)**Hodgens' Waterhen**

Rallus hodgeni Scarlett, 1955: *Rec. Cant. Museum* 6: 265 – Pyramid Valley Swamp, Canterbury.

Pyramidia [sic] *hodgeni* (Scarlett); Oliver 1955, *New Zealand Birds*, 2nd edition: 596.

Gallirallus hartreei Scarlett, 1970: *Notornis* 17: 70 – near Napier.

Capellirallus hodgeni (Scarlett); Scarlett 1970, *Notornis* 17: 71.

Gallinula (Tribonyx) hodgeni (Scarlett); Olson 1975, *Nat. Mus. N.Z. Rec.* 1: 68.

Gallinula hodgenorum (Scarlett); Olson 1986, *Notornis* 33: 32 – Emendation.

Gallinula hodgeni (Scarlett); Checklist Committee 1990, *Checklist Birds N.Z.*: 123.

Tribonyx hodgenorum (Scarlett); Livezey 1998, *Phil. Trans. Biol. Sci. (B)* 353: 2100.

Gallinula hodgenorum (Scarlett); Checklist Committee 2010, *Checklist Birds N.Z.*: 187.

Hodgens' waterhen is considered part of the same clade as Tasmanian native-hen and black-tailed native-hen (Olson 1975; Livezey 1998), hence we recommend its placement in *Tribonyx* (rather than *Gallinula*, see Checklist Committee 2010).

Order CHARADRIIFORMES: Waders, Skuas, Gulls, and Terns

Suborders Charadrii and Scolopaci added. The sequence of suborders and families follows Cracraft (2013) and Dickinson & Remsen (2013).

Family ROSTRATULIDAE Mathews: Painted Snipes

Genus *Rostratula* Vieillot

Synonym added: *Rhynchaea* Cuvier, 1817: *Règne Anim. I*: 487 – Type species (by original designation) *Scolopax capensis* Linnaeus = *Rostratula benghalensis* (Linnaeus).

Text replaced with: Two species (Lane & Rogers 2000; Baker, Pereira, Rogers *et al.* 2007; Christidis & Boles 2008): *R. benghalensis* breeds in central and southern Africa, south Asia, southern Japan, China, the Philippines, and western Indonesia; *R. australis* is confined to Australia. The two species were formerly considered conspecific (as *R. benghalensis*), with the sole New Zealand record not assigned to subspecies. Based on distribution, the Checklist Committee assumes this bird to have been *R. australis*.

► *Rostratula australis* (Gould)

Australian Painted Snipe

Rhynchaea australis Gould, 1838: *Synop. Birds Australia* 4: Appendix, 6 – New South Wales, Australia.

Rostratula benghalensis australis (Gould); Hayman, Marchant & Prater 1986, *Shorebirds*: 222.

Rostratula benghalensis; Checklist Committee 1990, *Checklist Birds N.Z.*: 128. Not *Rostratula benghalensis* (Linnaeus, 1758).

Rostratula australis (Gould); Christidis & Boles, *Syst. Taxon. Australian Birds* 2008: 24.

One record: Lake Ellesmere / Te Waihora, Aug. 1986 (Harrison & Mulligan 1987).

Family SCOLOPACIDAE Rafinesque: Sandpipers and Snipes

The common name adopted for the family replaces “Sandpipers and Allies” used by Checklist Committee (2010). The subfamilies used, their sequence, and the sequence of genera within each subfamily is based on Gibson & Baker (2012) and Chesser *et al.* (2020).

Subfamily NUMENINAE G.R. Gray: Curlews and Whimbrels

Numeninae G.R. Gray, 1840: *List Gen. Birds* (1st edition): 68 – Type genus *Numenius* Brisson, 1760.

Genus sequence: *Bartramia*, *Numenius*.

Genus *Numenius* Brisson

We follow Sangster *et al.* (2011) and Tan *et al.* (2019) in recognising two species of whimbrel, both of which reach New Zealand:

► *Numenius phaeopus* (Linnaeus)

Eurasian Whimbrel

Breeds from northern Europe to north-east Siberia. Migrates as far as Africa and Australasia (Higgins & Davies 1996). Up to five subspecies recognised of which one, *N. ph. variegatus*, has been recorded in New Zealand.

Numenius phaeopus variegatus (Scopoli)

Asiatic Whimbrel

This is the predominant form of whimbrel that occurs in New Zealand (Riegen & Sagar 2020).

► *Numenius hudsonicus* Latham

American Whimbrel

American whimbrel is retained on the New Zealand list on the basis of a bird collected at Wairau Bar in Dec. 1873 (Oliver 1955; NMNZ OR.000111), and a possible sight record in Firth of Thames in May 1964 (Hogg & Brown 1966). As dorsal plumage colour is now recognised to be an unreliable character for separating the two whimbrel species (Beaman & Madge 1998; Robson 2008; Brazil 2009; van Duivendijk 2011; *contra* Falla *et al.* 1966, 1981; Heather & Robertson 1996), all other New Zealand records of American whimbrel are considered to be unverified.

Subfamily LIMOSINAE G.R. Gray: Godwits

Limosinae G.R. Gray, 1841: *List Gen. Birds* (2nd edition): 88 – Type genus *Limosa* Brisson, 1760.

Limosa is the sole genus in the subfamily.

Subfamily ARENARIINAE Stejneger: Sandpipers and Turnstones

Arenariinae Stejneger, 1885 (1840): *Standard Natural History* 4: 99 – Type genus *Arenaria* Brisson, 1760 (*fide* ICZN 1999, Art. 40.2).

As we were unable to find proof that Reichenbach (1849–1853) used the subfamily name Calidrinae (or Calidridinae) [*fide* G.R. Gray (1871), Brodkorb (1967), Bock (1994), Checklist Committee (2010), R. Banks (2012), Dickinson & Remsen (2013) and others], we follow R. Banks (2012) and Chesser *et al.* (2020) in using Arenariinae. Some authorities use Tribe Arenariini for turnstones (*Arenaria*), and Tribe Calidrini for *Calidris* sandpipers (e.g. Dickinson & Remsen 2013; Handbook of the Birds of the World and BirdLife International 2020).

We follow Gibson & Baker (2012) and R. Banks (2012) in synonymising genera *Limicola*, *Philomachus*, and *Tryngites* within *Calidris*. We follow R. Banks (2012) in giving *Calidris* priority over *Philomachus*.

Genus *Arenaria* Brisson

► ***Arenaria interpres* (Linnaeus) Ruddy Turnstone**

Contra the 2010 Checklist, the nominate subspecies is the only form of ruddy turnstone known to occur in Australasia (Melville *et al.* 2020). As there is no confusion as to which of the two recognised subspecies occurs in New Zealand, *A. i. interpres* is added to the New Zealand list (and reference to *A. i. morinella* is deleted).

Genus *Calidris* Merrem

Synonyms added:

Philomachus Merrem, 1804: *Allg. Lit. Zeitung.* 2(168): col. 542 – Type species (by monotypy) *Tringa pugnax* Linnaeus = *Calidris pugnax* (Linnaeus).

Limicola Koch, 1816: *Syst. Baierischen Zool.* 1: 316 – Type species (by monotypy) *Numenius pygmaeus* Bechstein = *Calidris falcinellus* (Pontoppidan).

Eurynorhynchus Nilsson, 1821: *Ornith. Svecica*: 29 – Type species (by monotypy) *Platalea pygmea* Linnaeus = *Calidris pygmea* (Linnaeus).

Platyrhamphus Billberg, 1828: *Synop. Faun. Scand.* 1: 172 – Type species (by monotypy) *Numenius pusillus* Bechstein = *Calidris falcinellus* (Pontoppidan).

Falcinellus Kaup, 1829: *Skizz. Entwick.-Gesch. Nat. Syst.*: 37 – Type species (by monotypy) *Tringa platyrhynchos* Temminck = *Calidris falcinellus* (Pontoppidan).

Aphriza Audubon, 1839: *Ornith. Biography* 5: 249 – Type species (by monotypy) *Tringa townsendi* Audubon = *Calidris virgata* (Gmelin).

Schaeniclus G.R. Gray 1844: *List Birds Brit. Mus.* 3: 104 – Type species (by monotypy) *Tringa cinclus* Linnaeus = *Calidris alpina* (Linnaeus).

Tryngites Cabanis, 1856: *Journ. für Ornith.* 4(6): 418 – Type species (by monotypy) *Tringa rufescens* Vieillot = *Calidris subruficollis* (Vieillot).

Caladris; Oliver 1955, *New Zealand Birds*, 2nd edition: 406. Misspelling.

Synonym amended: *Ereunetes* Illiger, 1811: *Prodromus Syst. Mamm. Avium*: 262 – Type species (by monotypy) *Ereunetes petricatus* Illiger = *Calidris pusilla* (Linnaeus).

The species sequence follows R. Banks (2012): *Calidris tenuirostris*, *C. canutus*, *C. pugnax*, *C. falcinellus*, *C. acuminata*, *C. himantopus*, *C. ferruginea*, *C. subminuta*, *C. ruficollis*, *C. alba*, *C. alpina*, *C. bairdii*, *C. minuta*, *C. minutilla*, *C. fuscicollis*, *C. subruficollis*, *C. melanotos*, *C. pusilla*, and *C. mauri*.

► ***Calidris canutus* (Linnaeus) Red Knot | Huahou**

Second subspecies added:

***Calidris canutus piersmai* Tomkovich Red Knot | Huahou**

Canutus canutus piersmai Tomkovich, 2001: *Bull. Br. Ornithol. Club* 121: 259 – Bolshoy Lyakhovsky Island, New Siberia Islands.

Up to 25% of the red knots in New Zealand may be this subspecies (Rogers *et al.* 2010). Evidence for their presence in New Zealand includes two specimens in Te Papa (NMNZ OR.017279 & OR.019001) identified by Pavel Tomkovich in Mar. 2015, 12 individually colour-banded birds from New Zealand that were identified as *C. c. piersmai* from their breeding plumage while at Bohai Bay, China during migration to their breeding grounds (Rogers *et al.* 2010), and six of a sample of 15 red knots from Manawatu estuary being genotyped as *C. c. piersmai* (Conklin *et al.* 2022). Breeds in the New Siberia Islands (northern Siberia). Migrates to Australia and New Zealand (Rogers *et al.* 2010; Riegen & Sagar 2020). The world population is estimated at 48,700 to 60,100 birds (Rogers *et al.* 2010).

► ***Calidris pugnax* (Linnaeus) Ruff**

Synonym added: *Calidris pugnax* (Linnaeus); Banks 2012, *Zootaxa* 3513: 87.

► ***Calidris falcinellus* (Pontoppidan) Broad-billed Sandpiper**

Synonym added: *Calidris falcinellus* (Pontoppidan); Banks 2012, *Zootaxa* 3513: 87.

Calidris falcinellus sibirica* (Dresser)*Eastern Broad-billed Sandpiper**

Synonym added: *Calidris falcinellus sibirica* (Dresser); Gibson & Withrow 2015, *Western Birds* 46: 115.

► ***Calidris acuminata* (Horsfield)****Sharp-tailed Sandpiper | Kohutapu**

Synonyms added:

Tringa australis Jardine & Selby, 1830: *Illust. Ornith.* 2: [66], pl. 91 – “New Holland” = Australia.

Schæniclus australis (Jardine & Selby); G.R. Gray 1844, *List Birds Brit. Mus.* 3: 105.

Limnocinclus australis (Jardine & Selby); Potts 1873, *Trans. Proc. N.Z. Inst.* 5: 171.

Limnocinclus acuminatus rufescens Mathews, 1916: *Bull. Brit. Ornith. Club* 36: 82 – north-west Australia.

► ***Calidris ferruginea* (Pontoppidan)****Curlew Sandpiper**

Text added:

[***Calidris paramelanotos* Parker****Cox's Sandpiper**

Calidris paramelanotos Parker, 1982: *South Australian Naturalist* 56: 63 – Price Saltfields, Gulf St. Vincent, South Australia.

Calidris melanotos x *Calidris ferruginea* Christidis et al. 1996: *Condor* 98: 462.

Calidris ferruginea x *Calidris melanotos* Christidis & Boles, 2008: *Syst. Taxon. Australian Birds*: 139.

Calidris x *paramelanotos* Parker; Gunby 2018, *Notornis* 65: 51.

Cox's sandpiper was named based on two specimens collected in South Australia in 1975 & 1977 (Parker 1982). These birds and others that look like them are now considered to be stereotyped hybrids between a male pectoral sandpiper (*Calidris melanotos*) and a female curlew sandpiper (*C. ferruginea*) (Christidis, Davies et al. 1996). One accepted record from New Zealand, at Lake Ellesmere / Te Waihora in Nov. 2016 (Gunby 2018).]

New vagrant species added after *Calidris fuscicollis*:

► ***Calidris subruficollis* (Vieillot)****Buff-breasted Sandpiper**

Tringa subruficollis Vieillot, 1819: *Nouv. Dict. Hist. Nat., nouv. éd.* 2, 34: 465 – Paraguay.

Tringa rufescens Vieillot, 1819: *Nouv. Dict. Hist. Nat., nouv. éd.* 2, 34: 470 – Louisiana, U.S.A.

Tryngites rufescens (Vieillot); Cabanis 1856, *Journ. für Ornith.* 4(6): 418.

Tryngites subruficollis (Vieillot); Ridgway 1885, *Proc. U.S. Nat. Mus.* 8: 356.

Calidris subruficollis (Vieillot); Peterson 2020, *Field Guide Birds Western North America*: 124.

Breeds from north-east Siberia (Chukchi Peninsula) east to northern Alaska and Canada. Migrates to South America (mainly south-east Bolivia to north-east Argentina; Higgins & Davies 1996). Three records, probably of two birds: Papakanui Spit, South Kaipara Head, Mar. 2014; Ashley River estuary, Nov. 2019; and Lake Ellesmere / Te Waihora, Dec. 2019 (Miskelly et al. 2015; Miskelly et al. 2021).

► ***Calidris melanotos* (Vieillot)****Pectoral Sandpiper**

Text added: See comments under curlew sandpiper (*C. ferruginea*) regarding the status of Cox's sandpiper (*C. paramelanotos*) and its occurrence in New Zealand.

Genus *Limicola* Koch

We follow Gibson & Baker (2012) and R. Banks (2012) in synonymising *Limicola* within *Calidris*.

Genus *Philomachus* Merrem

We follow Gibson & Baker (2012) and R. Banks (2012) in synonymising *Philomachus* within *Calidris*. We follow R. Banks (2012) in giving *Calidris* priority over *Philomachus*.

Subfamily SCOLOPACINAE Rafinesque: Snipes, Woodcocks, and Dowitchers

Scolopacea Rafinesque, 1815: *Analyse de la Nature*: 70 – Type genus *Scolopax* Linnaeus, 1758.

Some authorities use Tribe Limnodromini for dowitchers (*Limnodromus*) and Tribe Scolopacini for woodcocks and snipes (*Scolopax*, *Coenocorypha*, *Gallinago*, and *Lymnocryptes*) (e.g. Dickinson & Remsen 2013; Handbook of the Birds of the World and BirdLife International 2020). Genus sequence: *Limnodromus*, *Coenocorypha*, *Gallinago*.

Genus *Coenocorypha* G.R.Gray

► ***Coenocorypha aucklandica* (G.R. Gray)**

Subantarctic Snipe

New subspecies inserted after *Coenocorypha aucklandica meinertzhagenae*:

***Coenocorypha aucklandica perseverance* Miskelly & Baker**

Campbell Island Snipe

Coenocorypha sp. Miskelly, 2000: *Notornis* 47: 131.

Coenocorypha "Campbell Island" Holdaway *et al.*, 2001: *N.Z. Journ. Zool.* 28: 133.

Coenocorypha sp. Barker *et al.*, 2005: *Notornis* 52: 145.

Coenocorypha undescribed sp. Miskelly & Fraser, 2006: *Notornis* 53: 353.

Coenocorypha "Campbell" Baker *et al.* 2010: *Conserv. Genet.* 11: 1366.

Coenocorypha aucklandica perserverance Miskelly & Baker, 2010: *Notornis* 56: 114 – Campbell Island.

This subspecies was discovered in 1997 and described in 2010 (Barker *et al.* 2005; Miskelly & Baker 2010a,b). It is known only from the Campbell Island group (Miskelly & Baker 2010a). Subspecies status supported by Shepherd *et al.* (2020).

Subfamily TRINGINAE Rafinesque: Shanks and Phalaropes

Tringaria Rafinesque, 1815: *Analyse de la Nature*: 71 – Type genus *Tringa* Linnaeus, 1758.

Phalaropodinae Bonaparte, 1831: *Saggio dist. Metodica Anim. Vert.*: 59 – Type genus *Phalaropus* Brisson, 1760.

Some authorities use Tribe Phalaropodini for phalaropes, and Tribe Tringini for the remaining members of the subfamily (e.g. Dickinson & Remsen 2013; Handbook of the Birds of the World and BirdLife International 2020). Genus sequence: *Phalaropus*, *Xenus*, *Actitis*, *Tringa*.

Genus *Xenus* Kaup

Xenus Kaup, 1829: *Skizz. Entwick.-Gesch. Nat. Syst.*: 115 – Type species (by monotypy) *Tringa cinerea* (Güldenstaedt) = *Xenus cinereus* (Güldenstaedt).

Terekia Bonaparte, 1838: *Comp. List Birds Europe & North Amer.*: 52 – Type species (by monotypy) *Totanus javanicus* Horsfield = *Xenus cinereus* (Güldenstaedt).

We follow Pereira & Baker (2005) and Gibson & Baker (2012) in separating *Xenus* and *Actitis* from *Tringa*. The genus and species sequence for *Xenus*, *Actitis*, and *Tringa* follows Dickinson & Remsen (2013) and Chesser *et al.* (2020).

► ***Xenus cinereus* (Güldenstaedt)**

Terek Sandpiper

Scolopax cinerea Güldenstaedt, 1774: *Novi Comment. Acad. Scient. Imperial. Petropol.* 19: 473, pl. 19 – shores of the Caspian Sea near mouth of the Terek River.

Scolopax Terek Latham, 1790: *Index Ornith.* 2: 724 – shores of the Caspian Sea near mouth of the Terek River.

Totanus javanicus Horsfield, 1821: *Trans. Linn. Soc. London* 13(1): 193 – Java, Indonesia.

Terekia cinerea (Güldenstaedt); Mathews 1927, *Syst. Avium Australasianarum* 1: 171.

Xenus cinereus (Güldenstaedt); Checklist Committee 1953, *Checklist N.Z. Birds*: 45.

Tringa terek (Latham); Checklist Committee 1990, *Checklist Birds N.Z.*: 156.

Tringa cinerea (Güldenstaedt); Sibley & Monroe 1990, *Distr. and Taxon. Birds of the World*: 238.

Genus *Actitis* Illiger

Actitis Illiger, 1811: *Prodromus Syst. Mamm. Avium*: 263 – Type species (by subsequent designation) *Tringa hypoleucus* Linnaeus = *Actitis hypoleucus* (Linnaeus).

► ***Actitis hypoleucus* (Linnaeus)**

Common Sandpiper

Tringa Hypoleucus Linnaeus, 1758: *Syst. Nat., 10th edition* 1: 149 – Europe, restricted to Sweden (*fide* Peters 1934, *Check-list Birds World* 2: 269).

Actitis hypoleucus (Linnaeus); Illiger, 1811: *Prodromus Syst. Mamm. Avium*: 263.

Actitis hypoleucus (Linnaeus); Mathews 1927, *Syst. Avium Australasianarum* 1: 171. Unjustified emendation.

Tringa hypoleucus Linnaeus; Checklist Committee 1970, *Annot. Checklist Birds N.Z.*: 48.

Genus *Tringa* Linnaeus

Tringa Linnaeus, 1758: *Syst. Nat., 10th edition* 1: 148 – Type species (by tautonymy) *Tringa ochropus* Linnaeus.

Trynga Moehring, 1758: *Geslach. Vogel.* 7: 67. Unjustified emendation.

Totanus Bechstein, 1803: *Ornith. Taschenb. Deutschland* 2: 282 – Type species (by tautonymy) *Totanus maculatus* Bechstein = *Tringa totanus* (Linnaeus).

Glottis Koch, 1816: *Syst. Baierischen Zool.* 42: 294 – Type species (by tautonymy) *Totanus glottis* Bechstein = *Tringa nebularia* (Gunnerus).

Iliornis Kaup, 1829: *Skizz. Entwick.-Gesch. Nat. Syst.*: 156 – Type species (by monotypy) *Totanus stagnatilis* Bechstein = *Tringa stagnatilis* (Bechstein).

Heteroscelus Baird, 1858: *Rep. Expl. Surv. Miss. River Pac. Ocean. Birds* 9: 734 – Type species (by monotypy) *Tringa brevipes* (Vieillot).

Heteractitis Stejneger, 1884: *Auk* 1: 236. Unnecessary *nomen novum* for *Heteroscelus* Baird, 1858.

We follow Pereira & Baker (2005) and Gibson & Baker (2012) in synonymising *Heteroscelus* with *Tringa*, and keeping *Xenus* and *Actitis* separate from *Tringa*. The genus and species sequence for *Tringa* follows Dickinson & Remsen (2013) and Chesser *et al.* (2020): *Tringa brevipes*, *T. incana*, *T. flavipes*, *T. nebularia*, and *T. stagnatilis*.

Suborder LARI: Pratincoles, Skuas, Auks, Gulls, Terns, and Skimmers

Family STERCORARIIDAE Gray: Skuas

Several studies have revealed skuas to be a recent radiation, with poor congruence between external morphology and genetic relationships (Olson 1985; Furness 1996; Cohen *et al.* 1997; Andersson 1999a,b; Braun & Brumfield 1998; Chu *et al.* 2009). We follow Olson (1985), Chu *et al.* (2009), and Dickinson & Remsen (2013) in placing all skua species in the genus *Stercorarius*.

Genus *Stercorarius* Brisson

Synonyms added:

Catharacta Brünnich, 1764: *Ornithologia Borealis*: 32 – Type species (by subsequent designation) *Catharacta skua* Brünnich = *Stercorarius skua* (Brünnich).

Coprotheres Reichenbach, 1852: *Avium Syst. Nat.* 3: 5 – Type species (by original designation) *Lestrina pomarinus* Temminck = *Stercorarius pomarinus* (Temminck).

Megalestris Bonaparte, 1856: *Compt. Rend. Séa. Acad. Sci., Paris* 43: 643 – Type species (by monotypy) *Larus catarractus* Linnaeus = *Stercorarius skua* (Brünnich)

Family LARIDAE Rafinesque: Noddies, Gulls, and Terns

We follow Baker, Pereira & Paton (2007), Ödeen *et al.* (2010), and Jackson *et al.* (2012) in placing all gulls, terns, and noddies in a single family (Laridae). This same approach was used by Dickinson & Remsen (2013), Clements *et al.* (2019), Chesser *et al.* (2020), Handbook of the Birds of the World and BirdLife International (2020), and F. Gill *et al.* (2021). These phylogenetic studies revealed that noddies (*Anous*) and then white tern (*Gygis*) were sister to other members of the family, requiring recognition of four subfamilies, in the sequence Anoinae, Gyginae, Larinae, and Sterninae.

Subfamily ANOINAE Bonaparte: Noddies

Anoëae Bonaparte, 1854: *Ann. Sci. Nat., Zool. Paris*, 4th series 1: 144 – Type genus *Anous* Stephens, 1826.

Cibois *et al.* (2016) revealed *Procelsterna* to be embedded within *Anous*. We follow Cibois *et al.* (2016) in treating *Procelsterna* Lafresnaye, 1842 as a junior synonym of *Anous* Stephens, 1826.

Genus *Anous* Stephens

Anoës Stephens, 1826: in G. Shaw, *General Zool.* 13(1): 139 – Type species (by subsequent designation) *Anoës niger* Stephens = *Anous stolidus* (Linnaeus).

Megalopterus Boie, 1826: *Isis von Oken*, Heft 10: col. 980 – Type species (by monotypy) *Sterna tenuirostris* Temminck = *Anous tenuirostris* (Temminck).

Procelsterna Lafresnaye, 1842: *Mag. Zool., Paris* 4(2): pl. 29 – Type species (by monotypy) *Procelsterna tereticollis* Lafresnaye = *Anous ceruleus* (F.D. Bennett).

Micranous Saunders, 1895: *Bull. Brit. Ornith. Club* 4: 19 – Type species (by original designation) *Micranous tenuirostris* (Temminck) = *Anous tenuirostris* Temminck.

We follow Gochfeld & Burger (1996), Dickinson & Remsen (2013), and Cibois *et al.* (2016) in recognising *A. albivittus* as a full species (cf. Checklist Committee 2010, which had *albivittus/albivitta* as a subspecies of *Procelsterna cerulea* (F.D. Bennett, 1840)).

Renamed species inserted after *Anous minutus*:

➤ *Anous albivittus* (Bonaparte) Grey Noddy

Anous cinereus Gould, 1846: *Proc. Zool. Soc. London* 1845 (13): 104 – Lord Howe Island, Australia. Junior secondary homonym of *Sterna cinerea* Haldeman, 1843.

Procelsterna albivitta Bonaparte, 1856: *Compt. Rend. Séa. Acad. Sci., Paris* 42: 773. *Nomen novum* for *Anous cinereus* Gould, 1846.

Anoës cinereus Gould; G.R. Gray 1862, *Ibis* 4: 250. Not *Sterna cinerea* Haldeman, 1843.

Anoës cinereus Gould; Cheeseman 1891, *Trans. Proc. N.Z. Inst.* 23: 222. Not *Sterna cinerea* Haldeman, 1843.

Procelsterna cinerea (Gould); Buller 1905, *Suppl. Birds N.Z.* 1: 161. Not *Sterna cinerea* Haldeman, 1843.

Procelsterna cerulea cinerea (Gould); Mathews & Iredale 1913, *Ibis* 1 (10th series): 246. Not *Sterna cinerea* Haldeman, 1843.
Procelsterna cerulea kermadeci Mathews, 1916: *Austral Avian Rec.* 3: 55 – Kermadec Islands.
Procelsterna cerulea albivitta Bonaparte; Checklist Committee 1953, *Checklist N.Z. Birds*: 52.
Procelsterna albivittata albivittata Bonaparte; Condon 1975, *Checklist Birds Australia* 1: 159. Unjustified emendation.
Procelsterna cerulea; Moore 1985, *Notornis* 32: 317. Not *Sterna cerulea* F.D. Bennett, 1840.
Procelsterna cerulea albivittata Bonaparte; Checklist Committee 1990, *Checklist Birds N.Z.* 171. Unjustified emendation.
Procelsterna albivitta Bonaparte; Gochfeld & Burger 1996, *in del Hoyo, Elliot & Sargatal Handbook Birds World* 3: 666.
Procelsterna albivitta albivitta Bonaparte; Dickinson & Remsen 2013, *Howard & Moore Complete Checklist Birds World*, 4th edition, 1: 224.
Anous albivittus (Bonaparte); Cibois, Thibault, Rocamora & Pasquet 2016, *Ibis* 158: 437.

Breeds at Isla Salas y Gómez, San Ambrosio, San Félix, Easter, Henderson, Austral, Tongan, Lord Howe, and Norfolk Islands, and in the New Zealand region on Kermadec Islands / Rangitāhua and occasionally on islands off the North Island: Manawatāwhi / Three Kings Islands (West Island: Scofield 1994; Higgins & Davies 1996) and in the Bay of Plenty (Volkner Rocks and Sugarloaf Rock, and Aldermen Islands; Falla 1970; Latham 2003). Occasionally in large flocks in the outer waters of the North Island from Northland to East Cape but rarely on the North Island's west coast (Higgins & Davies 1996; Foreman 2000). First recorded in the North Island in 1882 at Cape Maria van Diemen (Buller 1887–88). A single South Island record: Banks Peninsula, one wrecked in the 1968 “Wahine storm” (Latham 2003). The preferred common name is grey noddy, following Holdaway *et al.* (2001) and Dickinson (2003); it is also called grey ternlet.

Some authorities recognise separate subspecies on Lord Howe, Norfolk, Kermadec and Austral Islands, and Tonga, (*A. a. albivittus*), Henderson, Easter, and Salas y Gómez Islands (*A. a. skottsbergii* (Lönnberg, 1921)), and San Ambrosio and San Félix Islands (*A. a. imitatrix* (Mathews, 1912)) (*del Hoyo, Elliot & Sargatal 1996; Dickinson & Remsen 2013*). *Anous albivittus* was previously treated as a subspecies of *Anous ceruleus* (F.D. Bennett, 1840) (=*Procelsterna cerulea*), which occurs in the tropical Pacific at Christmas Island, north-west Hawai’ian, Marshall, northern Tuamotu, Society, and Marqueses groups, Phoenix, Ellice, and Samoan Islands, and at Gambier group (Dickinson & Remsen 2013).

Subfamily Gyginae inserted after Anouinae:

Subfamily GYGINAE Verheyen: White Tern

Gyginae Verheyen, 1959: *Bull. Inst. Roy. Sci. Nat. Belgique* 35(9): 14 – Type genus *Gygis* Wagler, 1832.

Genus *Gygis* Wagler

Subfamily LARINAE Rafinesque: Gulls

Larida Rafinesque, 1815: *Analyse de la Nature*: 72 – Type genus *Larus* Linnaeus, 1758.

Text replaced with: Pons *et al.* (2005) presented a complete gull phylogeny based on mitochondrial DNA, which showed that *Larus sensu* Chu (1998) was not monophyletic. Pons *et al.* (2005) recommended that ten gull genera be recognised, and this was largely followed by Christidis & Boles (2008), Dickinson & Remsen (2013), and the American Ornithologists' Union (e.g. Chesser *et al.* 2020). This taxonomy is supported by the Checklist Committee, and we follow the generic sequence used by Dickinson & Remsen (2013). Boie (1844: 196) listed “*Larus melanoleucus*” as from New Zealand but, as it does not include a description of the bird, it is a *nomen nudum* (Mathews & Iredale 1913: 248).

Genus *Chroicocephalus* Eyton

Gavia Boie, 1822: *Isis von Oken*, Heft 5: col. 563 – Type species (by subsequent designation) *Chroicocephalus ridibundus* (Linnaeus). Junior homonym of *Gavia* Moehring, 1758.

Chroicocephalus Eyton, 1836: *Cat. Brit. Birds*: 53 – Type species (by subsequent designation) *Larus capistratus* Temminck = *Chroicocephalus ridibundus* (Linnaeus).

Gelastes Bonaparte, 1853: *Journ für Ornith.* 1: 47 – Type species (by subsequent designation) *Larus gelastes* Lichenstein = *Chroicocephalus genei* (Brême).

Bruchigavia Bonaparte, 1857: *Consp. Gen. Avium* 2: 228 – Type species (by subsequent designation) *Larus novaehollandiae* Stephens = *Chroicocephalus novaehollandiae* (Stephens).

Astogavia Mathews, 1944: *Emu* 43: 244 – Type species (by original designation) *Bruchigavia melanorhyncha* Buller = *Chroicocephalus bulleri* (Hutton).

► *Chroicocephalus novaehollandiae* (Stephens)

Silver Gull

Chroicocephalus novaehollandiae scopulinus (J.R. Forster)

Red-billed Gull | Tarāpunga

Synonyms added:

Chroicocephalus schimperi Bonaparte, 1857: *Consp. Gen. Avium* 2: 229. Not *Chroicocephalus Schimperi* Bruch, 1853.

Chroicocephalus schimperi; Voisin & Voisin 2011, *Journ. Nat. Mus. (Prague) Nat. Hist. Series* 180(4): 45. Not *Chroicocephalus Schimperi* Bruch, 1853.

Chroicocephalus novaehollandiae scopulinus (J.R. Forster); Dickinson & Remsen 2013, *Howard & Moore Complete Checklist Birds World*, 4th edition 1: 226.

► ***Chroicocephalus bulleri* (Hutton)**

Black-billed Gull | Tarāpuka

Genus *Leucophaeus* Bruch

Leucophaeus Bonaparte, 1853: *Journ. für Ornith.* 1(1): 47. *Nomen nudum*.

Leucophaeus Bruch, 1853: *Journ. für Ornith.* 1(2): 108 – Type species (by monotypy) *Larus haematorhynchus* King = *Leucophaeus scoresbii* (Traill).

Melanolarus Heine & Reichenow, 1890, *Nom. Mus. Hein. Ornith.*: 359 – Type species (by original designation) *Larus franklini* (Swainson & Richardson) = *Leucophaeus pipixcan* (Wagler).

New vagrant species added before *Leucophaeus pipixcan*:

► ***Leucophaeus atricilla* (Linnaeus)**

Laughing Gull

Larus atricilla Linnaeus, 1758: *Syst. Nat. 10th edition* 1: 136. Based on “*Larus major*” of Catesby 1731: *Nat. Hist. Carolina, Florida & Bahamas* 1: 89 – America = Bahamas Islands (*fide* Catesby 1731).

Larus major T. Forster, 1817: *Synop. Cat. Brit. Birds*: 32. Unnecessary *nomen novum* for *Larus atricilla* Linnaeus, 1758.

Xema atricilla (Linnaeus); Boie 1822, *Isis von Oken* 5: 563.

Gavia atricilla (Linnaeus); Macgillivray 1842, *Man. Brit. Ornith.* 2: 240.

Chroicocephalus atricilla (Linnaeus); Bruch 1853 *Journ. für Ornith.* 1: 106.

Atricilla Catesbyi Bruch, 1855: *Journ. für Ornith.* 3: 287 – North America.

Atricilla megalopterus Bruch, 1855: *Journ. für Ornith.* 3: 287 – Peru and Gulf of Mexico.

Atricilla micropterus Bruch, 1855: *Journ. für Ornith.* 3: 288 – Southern North America.

Atricilla catesbaei (Bruch); Bonaparte 1856, *Compt. Rend. Séa. Acad. Sci., Paris* 42: 771. Invalid emendation.

Atricilla macroptera Bonaparte, 1856: *Compt. Rend. Séa. Acad. Sci., Paris* 42: 771 – no locality.

Atricilla minor Bonaparte, 1856: *Compt. Rend. Séa. Acad. Sci., Paris* 42: 771 – no locality.

Chroecocephalus atricilla (Linnaeus); A. & E. Newton 1859: *Ibis* 1: 371. Misspelling.

Leucophaeus atricilla (Linnaeus); Pons *et al.* 2005, *Mol. Phyl. Evol.* 37: 692.

Breeds eastern and southern United States, Mexico, Caribbean, Venezuela, and French Guiana, migrating south to northern Brazil and Peru. Two subspecies: *L. a. megalopterus* (Bruch, 1855) is migratory, breeding in United States and Mexico; the more southerly *L. a. atricilla* is sedentary (Higgins & Davies 1996). One near Opotiki in Dec. 2016 was the first record from New Zealand (Miskelly *et al.* 2017). Probably the same bird was subsequently recorded in the same vicinity in Dec. 2017, at Wairoa in Jan. 2018, and at Cape Kidnappers in Oct. 2018 (Miskelly *et al.* 2019, 2021).

► ***Leucophaeus pipixcan* (Wagler)**

Franklin's Gull

Synonyms added:

Larus atricilla Sabine, 1823: *App. Franklin's Polar Sea*: 695. Not *Larus atricilla* Linnaeus, 1758.

Larus Franklinii Jameson, 1831 (August): *Wilson's American Ornithology* 4: 245 – Saskatchewan River, Manitoba. *Nomen nudum*.

Xema franklini (Swainson & Richardson); Bonaparte 1838, *Comp. List Birds Europe & North Amer.*: 62.

Xema pipixcan (Wagler); Boie 1844, *Isis von Oken*, Heft 37: col. 194.

Larus pipixcan Wagler; G.R. Gray 1846, *Gen. Birds* 3(21): 654.

Larus cucullatus Reichenbach, 1848: *Natatores*, pl. 23, fig. 296 (ex Lichtenstein manuscript) – Mexico.

Chroicocephalus Franklini (Swainson & Richardson); Bruch 1853, *Journ. für Ornith.* 1: 104.

Chroicocephalus cucullatus (Reichenbach); Bruch 1853, *Journ. für Ornith.* 1: 104.

Chroicocephalus Kittlitzii Bruch, 1853: *Journ. für Ornith.* 1: 104 – Chile.

Chroicocephalus Schimperi Bruch, 1853: *Journ. für Ornith.* 1: 104 – New Zealand.

Chroicocephalus serranus Bruch, 1853: *Journ. für Ornith.* 1: 106 – Perú. Not *Larus serranus* Tschudi, 1844.

Gavia cucullata (Reichenbach); Bonaparte 1856, *Compt. Rend. Séa. Acad. Sci., Paris* 42: 771.

Gavia pipixan [sic] (Wagler); Bonaparte 1856, *Compt. Rend. Séa. Acad. Sci., Paris* 42: 771.

Gavia franklini (Swainson & Richardson); Bonaparte 1856, *Compt. Rend. Séa. Acad. Sci., Paris* 42: 771.

Gavia kittlitzii (Bruch); Bonaparte 1856, *Compt. Rend. Séa. Acad. Sci., Paris* 42: 771.

Chroicocephalus franklinii (Swainson & Richardson); Lawrence in Baird 1858, *Rep. Pacific R. R. Expl. Surv.* 9: 851.

Larus cinereo-caudatus Philippi & Landbeck, 1861: *Wiegmann's Archiv für Naturg.* 1: 293 – Chile.

Larus schimperi Bonaparte; G.R. Gray 1862, *Ibis* 4: 248. Not *Chroicocephalus Schimperi* Bruch, 1853.

Larus franklini (Swainson & Richardson); Schlegel 1863, *Mus. Hist. Nat. Pays-Bas, Lari* 6: 36.

Chroicocephalus atricilla Sclater, 1864: *Proc. Zool. Soc. London* 1864 (2): 179 – Mexico City. Not *Larus atricilla* Linnaeus, 1758.

Chroicocephalus franklini (Swainson & Richardson); Snow 1873, *Cat. Birds Kansas*: 12.

Larus (Chroicocephalus) franklini (Swainson & Richardson); Coues 1874, *Birds of the Northwest*: 653.

Melanolarus franklini (Swainson & Richardson); Heine & Reichenow 1890, *Nom. Mus. Hein. Ornith.*: 359.

Leucophaeus pipixcan (Wagler); Pons *et al.* 2005, *Mol. Phyl. Evol.* 37: 692.

Synonyms amended:

Larus Pipixcan Wagler, 1831 (May): *Isis von Oken*, Heft 4: col. 515 – Mexico.

Larus Franklinii Swainson & Richardson, 1832 [1831] (*fide* Browning & Monroe 1991, *Archiv. Nat. Hist.* 18: 393): *Fauna Boreali-Americanæ, Birds* 2: 424, pl. 71 – Saskatchewan River, Manitoba.

Text added: Bruch (1853) described *Chroicocephalus Schimperi* from New Zealand; his description (in German) translates as “About a third smaller than black-headed gull (*Chroicocephalus ridibundus*); white, with a grey back; head black; flight feathers black with white tips; bill short and stout, beautiful red.” Saunders (1896) listed *C. schimperi* Bruch, 1853 as a junior synonym of *Larus franklini* (= *Leucophaeus pipixcan*). The connection of the type specimen(s) with New Zealand is unknown, and likely to be in error. Bonaparte (1857) cited *Chroicocephalus schimperi* Bruch, 1853 as from New Zealand. Voisin & Voisin (2011) listed three specimens – which may have been examined by Bonaparte – of *Larus scopulinus* (= *Chroicocephalus novaehollandiae scopulinus*) from New Zealand labelled as *Larus schimperi* or *Gelastes schimperi*. None of the three specimens are listed as types, and they do not match Bruch’s 1853 description. Therefore, we list *Chroicocephalus Schimperi* Bruch, 1853 and one variant as junior synonyms of *L. pipixcan*. Two other citations to *Chroicocephalus schimperi* Bonaparte, 1857 are listed under the synonymy for *C. n. scopulinus*.

Genus *Larus* Linnaeus

Synonymy reduced to:

Larus Linnaeus, 1758: *Syst. Nat. 10th edition 1*: 136 – Type species (by subsequent designation) *Larus marinus* Linnaeus.

Dominicanus Bruch, 1853: *Journ. für Ornith.* 1: 100 – Type species (by subsequent designation) *Larus marinus* Linnaeus.

Clupeilarus Bonaparte, 1856: *Compt. Rend. Séa. Acad. Sci., Paris* 42: 770 – Type species (by subsequent designation) *Larus fuscus* Linnaeus.

Text added: A report of an immature Pacific gull (*Larus pacificus*) on Dargaville Beach in Jan. 2010 was initially accepted by the Records Appraisal Committee, before the report was reviewed and rejected, and the species removed from the New Zealand list in 2021 (Miskelly *et al.* 2013; Unusual Bird Report database, <http://rare.birds.org.nz/>, viewed Feb. 2022). The timing of these two decisions meant that the species never featured in a checklist published by the Ornithological Society of New Zealand.

► *Larus dominicanus* Lichtenstein

Southern Black-backed Gull | Karoro

The Checklist Committee (2010) recognised five subspecies following Jiguet (2002): *L. d. dominicanus* Lichtenstein (South America, Australia, New Zealand and its subantarctic islands); *L. d. vetula* (Bruch, 1853) (southern Africa); *L. d. austrinus* Fleming, 1924 (Antarctica); *L. d. judithae* Jiguet, 2002 (south Indian Ocean); and *L. d. melisandae* Jiguet, 2002 (Madagascar). Subsequent genetic research indicates that New Zealand birds are not *L. d. dominicanus* but are most closely related to Antarctic and Kerguelen Islands birds (Sternkopf 2011). A morphological review (Jiguet *et al.* 2012) recommends that six subspecies be recognised, with the New Zealand subspecies being *Larus dominicanus antipodus* G.R. Gray, 1844, and *L. d. dominicanus* being in South America. However, this study also recommends “further molecular studies of this widely distributed species before making further definitive taxonomic recommendations”. Without further research the Committee considers that New Zealand birds should be considered of indeterminate subspecies. Note that the synonyms listed by Checklist Committee (2022) for *Larus dominicanus* apply only to birds in the New Zealand region.

Subfamily STERNINAE Bonaparte: Terns

Sterninae Bonaparte, 1838: *Geogr. Comp. List. Birds*: 61 – Type genus *Sterna* Linnaeus, 1758.

Genus *Gelochelidon* Brehm

► *Gelochelidon nilotica* (Gmelin)

Gull-billed Tern

Sterna nilotica Gmelin, 1789: *Syst. Nat., 13th edition 1(2)*: 606 – Egypt.

Six or seven subspecies recognised globally (Gochfeld & Burger 1996; Higgins & Davies 1996). Until recently the subspecies occurring in New Zealand had not been confirmed (Checklist Committee 2010; Miskelly *et al.* 2013).

Gelochelidon nilotica macrotarsa (Gould)

Australian Gull-billed Tern

Sterna macrotarsa Gould, 1837: *Proc. Zool. Soc. London* 1837(5): 26 – in terrâ Van Diemen = Tasmania, Australia.

Gelochelidon macrotarsa (Gould); Boie 1844, *Isis von Oken*, Heft 37: col. 187.

Gelochelidon nilotica normani Mathews 1924: *Austr. Av. Rec.* 2: 125 – Normanton, Queensland.

Gelochelidon nilotica cloatesi Mathews 1924: *Bull. Brit. Orn. Club* 45: 41 – Point Cloates, West Australia.

Gelochelidon nilotica macrotarsa (Gould); Peters 1934, *Check-list Birds World* 2: 330.

Gelochelidon nilotica macrotarsa (Gould); Checklist Committee 1970, *Annot. Checklist Birds N.Z.*: 54.

One bird among a major influx of the species to New Zealand in 2011 was confirmed as being *G. n. macrotarsa* (Miskelly *et al.* 2013).

Genus *Chlidonias* Rafinesque

A black tern (*Chlidonias niger*) reported from the south-western North Island in early 2022 had not been assessed by the Birds New Zealand Records Appraisal Committee in time to be included in this edition of the Checklist (Unusual Bird Report database, <http://rare.birds.org.nz/>, viewed Feb. 2022).

Genus *Sterna* Linnaeus

A black-naped tern (*Sterna sumatrana*) reported from Muriwai, Auckland west coast, in Feb. 2022 had not been assessed by the Birds New Zealand Records Appraisal Committee in time to be included in this edition of the Checklist (Unusual Bird Report database, <http://rare.birds.org.nz/>, viewed Feb. 2022).

Genus *Thalasseus* Boie

Thalasseus Boie, 1822: *Isis von Oken*, Heft 5: col. 563 – Type species (by subsequent designation) *Thalasseus cantiacus* (Gmelin) = *Thalasseus sandvicensis* (Latham).

We follow Bridge *et al.* (2005), Sangster *et al.* (2005), R. Banks *et al.* (2006), and Dickinson & Remsen (2013) in using genus *Thalasseus* for crested tern.

► *Thalasseus bergii* (Lichtenstein)

Crested Tern

Sterna bergii Lichtenstein, 1823: *Verzeich. Doubl., Berlin*: 80 – Cape of Good Hope, South Africa.

Thalasseus bergii (Lichtenstein); Christidis & Boles 2008, *Syst. Taxon. Australian Birds*: 26, 144.

Thalasseus bergii cristatus is thought to be the subspecies reaching New Zealand (Turbott 1952). It breeds in south-east Asia, Indonesia, Australia, and western and central Pacific east to the Tuamoto Archipelago. Extralimital subspecies are: *T. b. bergii*, breeds in Namibia and South Africa; *T. b. thalassinus* (Stresemann, 1914), breeds in Tanzania; and *T. b. velox* (Cretzschmar, 1827), breeds in the Red Sea, Persian Gulf, and Indian Ocean (Higgins & Davies 1996).

Thalasseus bergii cristatus (Stephens)

Crested Tern

Sterna cristata Stephens, 1826: in G. Shaw, *General Zool.* 13(1): 146 – China and many of the south-eastern islands of Asia, restricted to China (*fide* Peters 1934, *Check-list Birds World* 2: 342).

Sterna poliocerca Gould, 1837: *Proc. Zool. Soc. London* 1837 (5): 26 – “in terrâ Van Diemen” = Tasmania, Australia.

Sterna rectirostris Peale, 1848: *U.S. Expl. Exped.* 8: 281, pl. 75, fig. 2 – Fiji Islands.

Sterna poliocerca Gould; G.R. Gray 1862, *Ibis* 4: 249.

Thalasseus bergii rectirostris (Peale); Mathews & Iredale 1913, *Ibis* 1 (10th series): 243.

Thalasseus bergii cristatus (Stephens); Mathews 1927, *Syst. Avium Australasianarum* 1: 137.

Thalassius [sic] *bergii*; Marples 1946, *New Zealand Bird Notes* 1 (Suppl.): 5. Not *Sterna bergii* Lichtenstein, 1823.

Sterna bergii cristata Stephens; Turbott 1952, *Rec. Auck. Inst. Museum* 4: 189.

Sterna bergii poliocerca Gould; Condon 1975, *Checklist Birds Australia* 1: 156.

Sterna bergii; Checklist Committee 1990, *Checklist Birds N.Z.*: 168. Not *Sterna bergii* Lichtenstein, 1823.

Thalasseus bergii cristatus (Stephens); Dickinson & Remsen 2013, *Howard & Moore Complete Checklist Birds World*, 4th edition, 1: 233.

Order SPHENISCIFORMES: Penguins

Family SPHENISCIDAE Bonaparte: Penguins

Genus *Pygoscelis* Wagler

► *Pygoscelis papua* (J.R. Forster)

Gentoo Penguin

Text replaced with: We recognise four subspecies, based on Perttierra *et al.* (2020) and Tyler *et al.* (2020), and following F. Gill *et al.* (2021): northern gentoo penguin *P. p. papua*, breeding on the Falkland Islands and Tierra del Fuego; southern gentoo penguin *P. p. ellsworthi* Murphy, 1947, breeding on the Antarctic Peninsula, South Sandwich Islands, South Shetland Islands, and South Orkney Islands; South Georgia gentoo penguin *P. p. ponctetii* Tyler, Bonfitto, Clucas, Reddy & Younger, 2020, breeding on South Georgia; and eastern gentoo penguin *P. p. taeniata*, breeding on Marion, Prince Edward, Crozet, Kerguelen, Heard, and Macquarie Islands. Those that have straggled to New Zealand shores are presumed to have been of the eastern subspecies.

Pygoscelis papua taeniata (Peale)

Eastern Gentoo Penguin

Aptenodytes taeniata Peale, 1848: *U.S. Expl. Exped.* 8: 264, 335 – Macquarie Island.

Pygoscelis taeniala (Peale); Scott 1883, *Trans. Proc. N.Z. Inst.* 25: 491. Unjustified emendation.

Pygoscelis taeniatus (Peale); Buller 1888 (Dec.), *History of the Birds of N.Z.*, 2nd edition 2 (part 13): 304. Unjustified emendation.

Pygoscelis papua taeniata (Peale); Mathews & Iredale 1913, *Ibis* 1 (10th ser.): 219.
Pygoscelis taeniata (Peale); Falla 1937, *BANZARE Reports Ser. B*, 2: 19.

Genus ***Eudyptes*** Vieillot

Text added: The identity of the species referred to as *Eudyptes vittata* Finsch, 1875 is uncertain. *Contra Ogilvie-Grant* (1905) and Falla & Mougin (1979: 129), the name was based on a single specimen. Finsch's (1875) description of the starting point and form of the superciliary stripe is consistent with an immature Fiordland crested penguin (*E. pachyrhynchus*); however, the description of the bill is not entirely consistent with this species. Unless the holotype can be located and identified, we recommend that *E. vittata* be regarded as a *nomen dubium*.

Mathews (1935) incorrectly used the name *E. vittata* for *E. sclateri*.

➤ ***Eudyptes moseleyi*** Mathews & Iredale

Northern Rockhopper Penguin

Synonyms added:

Eudyptes chrysocome moseleyii Mathews & Iredale; Marchant & Higgins 1990, *HANZAB* 1: 240. Unjustified emendation.
Eudyptes mosleyi; Scofield & Stephenson 2013, *Birds N.Z. Photographic Guide*. 1st edition: 82. Misspelling.

We follow Shirihai (2002), Dickinson & Remsen (2013), and F. Gill *et al.* (2021) in using northern rockhopper penguin as the vernacular name for this species (cf. Moseley's rockhopper penguin *sensu* Checklist Committee 2010).

➤ ***Eudyptes sclateri*** Buller

Erect-crested Penguin | Tawaki Nana Hi

Synonyms added:

Eudyptes vittata; Mathews 1935, *Ibis* 5 (13th series): 886. Not *Eudyptes vittata* Finsch, 1875 = *nomen dubium*.
Eudyptes pachyrhynchus vittata; Mathews 1935, *Ibis* 5 (13th series): 887. Not *Eudyptes vittata* Finsch, 1875 = *nomen dubium*.

New (extinct) species inserted after *Eudyptes sclateri*:

➤ †***Eudyptes warhami*** Cole, Tennyson, Ksepka & Thomas

Chatham Island Crested Penguin

Eudyptes? n. sp. Tennyson & Millener, 1994: *Notornis* 41 (supp.): 169.

Eudyptes, species undescribed Millener 1999: *Smithsonian Contrib. Paleobiology* 89: 97.

Eudyptes chathamensis Thiebot, Cherel, Crawford, Makhado, Trathan, Pinaud & Bost, 2013: *PLOS One* 8(8) e71429: 2. *Nomen nudum*.

Eudyptes warhami Cole, Tennyson, Ksepka & Thomas (in Cole, Ksepka, Mitchell, Tennyson, Thomas, Pan, Zhang, Rawlence, Wood, Bover, Bouzat, Cooper, Fiddaman, Hart, Miller, Ryan, Shepherd, Wilmhurst & Waters), 2019: *Mol. Biol. Evol.* 36: 787 – Tahatika Creek, Chatham Island.

This species is known only from Holocene remains on Chatham and Mangere Islands, with referred specimens from the east coast of mainland New Zealand (Tennyson & Millener 1994; Millener 1999; Cole, Ksepka *et al.* 2019).

➤ ***Eudyptes schlegeli*** Finsch

Royal Penguin

We follow Checklist Committee (1953), Cole, Dutoit *et al.* (2019), Cole, Ksepka *et al.* (2019), and Frugone *et al.* (2019) in regarding *Eudyptes schlegeli* as a subspecies of *Eudyptes chrysophrys*.

Genus ***Megadyptes*** Milne-Edwards

Cole, Ksepka *et al.* (2019) described an extinct subspecies of yellow-eyed penguin from the Chatham Islands, and recommended that Waitaha penguin also be considered a subspecies of yellow-eyed penguin. These recommendations require a nominate subspecies to be created for yellow-eyed penguin.

➤ ***Megadyptes antipodes*** (Hombron & Jacquinot)

Yellow-eyed Penguin | Hoiho

North Island, South Island, Stewart Island / Rakiura, Chatham Islands, Auckland Islands / Maukahuka, and Campbell Island / Motu Ihupuku. Three subspecies are recognised, following Cole, Ksepka *et al.* (2019).

Megadyptes antipodes antipodes (Hombron & Jacquinot)

Yellow-eyed Penguin | Hoiho

Synonymy transferred from under the species name, with two synonyms added:

Aptenodytes antipodes Hombron [sic]; Anon. 1870, *Cat. Colonial Mus.*: 75.

Megadyptes antipodes Cole *et al.*, 2019: *Mol. Biol. Evol.* 36: 786.

†***Megadyptes waitaha*** Boessenkool, Austin, Worthy, Scofield, Cooper, Seddon & Waters

Waitaha Penguin

Synonym added: *Megadyptes antipodes waitaha* Boessenkool, Austin, Worthy, Scofield, Cooper, Seddon & Waters; Cole *et al.*, 2019, *Mol. Biol. Evol.* 36: 790.

We follow Cole, Ksepka *et al.* (2019) in regarding *Megadyptes waitaha* as a subspecies of *Megadyptes antipodes*. *Megadyptes antipodes waitaha* has been inserted before *M. a. richdalei*.

†*Megadyptes antipodes richdalei* Tennyson & Cole**Richdale's Penguin**

Megadyptes antipodes richdalei Tennyson & Cole (in Cole, Ksepka, Mitchell, Tennyson, Thomas, Pan, Zhang, Rawlence, Wood, Bover, Bouzat, Cooper, Fiddaman, Hart, Miller, Ryan, Shepherd, Wilmshurst & Waters), 2019: *Mol. Biol. Evol.* 36: 788 – east of Maunganui, Chatham Island.

This subspecies is known only from Holocene remains on Chatham and Pitt Islands (Cole, Ksepka *et al.* 2019).

Genus *Eudyptula* Bonaparte

Text added: The Checklist Committee accepts that two *Eudyptula* taxa are present in New Zealand following the findings of Grosser *et al.* (2015, 2016, 2017). However, the Committee supports recognition of these taxa as subspecies rather than as species (*contra* Grosser *et al.* 2015). Support for these two clades is backed up by earlier results from J. Banks *et al.* (2008) and Peucker *et al.* (2009).

➤ <i>Eudyptula minor</i> (J.R. Forster)	Little Penguin
--	-----------------------

Eudyptula minor minor* (J.R. Forster)*New Zealand Little Penguin | Kororā**

Aptenodytes minor J.R. Forster, 1781: *Comment. Phys. Soc. Reg. Sci. Gottingensis* 3: 135 – Dusky Sound, Fiordland and Queen Charlotte Sound, Marlborough Sounds.

Eudyptula minor (J.R. Forster); Checklist Committee 1990, *Checklist Birds N.Z.*: 69. In part.

Widespread throughout coastal North and South Islands and the Chatham Islands but largely replaced by the Australian little penguin in Otago since human settlement (Grosser *et al.* 2015, 2016).

No type specimen is known to survive (Medway 1976). *Contra* Checklist Committee (2010), the type locality should be expanded to include Queen Charlotte Sound, as Forster (1781) referred to penguins from both Dusky Sound [“*portu obscuro* (Dusky Bay)’] and Queen Charlotte Sound [“*Aesluarri Reginae Charlottae* (Quen [sic] Charlotte’s Sound)”] within his type description.

Second subspecies added:

Eudyptula minor novaehollandiae* (Stephens)*Australian Little Penguin**

Spheniscus Novae Hollandiae Stephens, 1826: *in Shaw, General Zool.* 13(1): 68 – Port Jackson, New South Wales, Australia.

Aptenodytes australis “Gray”; Griffith 1829, *Anim. Kingd.* 8: 53 – Sydney, Australia.

Aptenodytes undina Gould, 1844: *Proc. Zool. Soc. London* 1844 (12): 57 – “Van Diemen’s Land” = Tasmania, Australia.

Eudyptula undina (Gould); Hutton 1871, *Cat. Birds N.Z.*: 54.

Eudyptula undina (Gould); Sharpe 1875, *in Richardson & J.E. Gray (Eds), Zool. Voy. ‘Erebus’ & ‘Terror’, Birds – I (Appendix)*: 35. Misspelling.

Eudyptula minor woodwardi Mathews, 1912: *Novit. Zool.* 18(3): 199 – Sandy Hook Island, Western Australia.

Eudyptula minor undina (Gould); White 1918, *South Austr. Ornith.* 3(6): 168.

Eudyptula minor novaehollandiae (Stephens); Checklist Committee 1953, *Checklist N.Z. Birds*: 14.

Eudyptula minor minor; Kinsky & Falla 1976, *Nat. Mus. N.Z. Rec.* 1(7): 111. Not *Eudyptula minor minor* (J.R. Forster, 1781).

Eudyptula minor (J.R. Forster); Checklist Committee 1990, *Checklist Birds N.Z.*: 69. In part.

Eudyptula novaehollandiae (Stephens); Grosser, Burridge, Peucker & Waters 2015, *PLOS One* 10(12): e0144966. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0144966: 12.

Southern Australia (including Tasmania) and Otago, New Zealand (Grosser *et al.* 2015). The arrival of this taxon in New Zealand post-dates human settlement (Grosser *et al.* 2016).

Order PROCELLARIIFORMES: Albatrosses, Petrels, and Shearwaters

The Checklist Committee (2010) recognised four families within the Procellariiformes, including Pelecanoididae (diving petrels *Pelecanoides* spp.) and a single family of storm petrels (Hydrobatidae). However, many recent reviews have not recognised Pelecanoididae, considering them to be part of the Procellariidae (e.g. Cracraft *et al.* 2004; Penhallurick & Wink 2004; Ericson *et al.* 2006; Hackett *et al.* 2008; Dickinson & Remsen 2013; Burleigh *et al.* 2015; Prum *et al.* 2015; Clements *et al.* 2019; Chesser *et al.* 2020; Handbook of the Birds of the World and BirdLife International 2020; Estandia *et al.* 2021; F. Gill *et al.* 2021). These conclusions were largely based on genetic studies, with little consideration given to the distinctive morphology of diving petrels or their ancient fossil record (Worthy *et al.* 2007; Mayr & Smith 2012). While we adopt the now widely accepted treatment of the diving petrels as being part of the Procellariidae, we recommend a more comprehensive review of relationships within the Order Procellariiformes, particularly whether the distinctiveness and antiquity of some genera within the Procellariidae warrant their recognition at family level.

Several genetic studies have concluded that southern and northern storm petrels are not sister taxa, and therefore that each of the two clades should be recognised at family level (e.g. Kennedy & Page 2002; Hackett *et al.* 2008; Prum *et al.* 2015; Reddy *et al.* 2017; Estandia *et al.* 2021). While we follow this approach, we note that several other genetic and morphological studies concluded that the two storm petrel clades were each other’s closest relatives (Penhallurick & Wink 2004; Ericson *et al.* 2006; Ksepka *et al.* 2006, 2012; Livezey & Zusi 2007; Mayr & Smith 2012; Burleigh *et al.*

2015). Authors differ in their interpretation of which of the four procellariiform families is most basal. We follow Prum *et al.* (2015), Reddy *et al.* (2017), and Estandia *et al.* (2021) in placing albatrosses first, followed by southern storm petrels (Oceanitidae), then northern storm petrels (Hydrobatidae), followed by Procellariidae.

Family OCEANITIDAE Salvin: Southern Storm Petrels

We follow B. Robertson *et al.* (2011) in treating *Pealeornis* as a junior synonym of *Fregetta*.

Genus *Fregetta* Bonaparte

Synonym added: *Pealeornis* Mathews, 1932: *Bull. Brit. Ornith. Club* 52: 132 – Type species (by original designation) *Pealeornis maoriana* Mathews = *Fregetta maoriana* (Mathews).

Fregetta species are listed in the order: *F. grallaria*, *F. tropica*, *F. maoriana*.

► *Fregetta maoriana* (Mathews)

New Zealand Storm Petrel | Takahikare-raro

Additional synonyms:

Fregetta maoriana (Mathews); B. Robertson *et al.* 2011, *Mol. Phyl. Evol.* 63: 952.

Pealiornis [sic] *maoriana*; C. Robertson 2012, *Notornis* 59: 91. Misspelling.

New Zealand storm petrel forms a monophyletic clade with other *Fregetta* species. As it is the type species of *Pealeornis* Mathews, this genus becomes a junior synonym of *Fregetta* (see B. Robertson *et al.* 2011).

Family HYDROBATIDAE Mathews: Northern Storm Petrels

We use the genus *Hydrobates* for species formerly included in genus *Oceanodroma*, following the recommendations of Dickinson & Remsen (2013) and Chesser *et al.* (2019), which were based on the analyses of Penhallurick & Wink (2004), B. Robertson *et al.* (2011), and Wallace *et al.* (2017).

Genus *Hydrobates* Boie

Hydrobates Boie, 1822: *Isis von Oken*, Heft 5: col. 562 – Type species (by subsequent designation) *Procellaria pelagica* Linnaeus, 1758 = *Hydrobates pelagicus* (Linnaeus).

Oceanodroma Reichenbach, 1853: *Avium Syst. Nat.*: iv – Type species (by original designation) *Procellaria furcata* Gmelin = *Hydrobates furcatus* (Gmelin).

Cymochorea Coues, 1864: *Proc. Acad. Nat. Sci. Philad.* 16: 75 – Type species (by original designation) *Procellaria leucorhoa* Vieillot = *Hydrobates leucorhous* (Vieillot).

Halocyptena Coues, 1864: *Proc. Acad. Nat. Sci. Philad.* 16: 78 – Type species (by monotypy) *Halocyptena microsoma* Coues = *Hydrobates microsoma* (Coues).

Pacificodroma Bianchi, 1913: *Faune Russie, Oiseaux* 1(2): 516, 559 – Type species (by original designation) *Thalassidroma monorhis* Swinhoe = *Hydrobates monorhis* (Swinhoe).

Bannermania Mathews & Iredale, 1915: *Ibis* 3 (10th ser.): 578 – Type species (by monotypy) *Thalassidroma hornbyi* G.R. Gray = *Hydrobates hornbyi* (G.R. Gray).

Tethysia Mathews, 1933: *Bull. Brit. Ornith. Club* 53: 154 – Type species (by original designation) *Procellaria tethys* Bonaparte = *Hydrobates tethys* (Bonaparte).

Loomelia Mathews, 1934: *Bull. Brit. Ornith. Club* 54: 119 – Type species (by original designation) *Procellaria melania* Bonaparte = *Hydrobates melania* (Bonaparte).

Thalobata Mathews, 1943: in Mathews & Hallstrom, *Notes Procellariiformes*: 27 – Type species (by original designation) *Thalassidroma castro* Harcourt = *Hydrobates castro* (Harcourt). As a subgenus of *Cymochorea*.

Stonowa Mathews, 1943: in Mathews & Hallstrom, *Notes Procellariiformes*: 27 – Type species (by original designation) *Cymochorea owstoni* Mathews & Iredale = *Hydrobates tristrami* Salvin. As a subgenus of *Cymochorea*.

Bianchoma Mathews, 1943: in Mathews & Hallstrom, *Notes Procellariiformes*: 29 – Type species (by original designation) *Cymochorea matsudairae* (Kuroda) = *Hydrobates matsudairae* Kuroda. As a subgenus of *Cymochorea*.

► *Hydrobates leucorhous* (Vieillot)

Leach's Storm Petrel

Hydrobates leucorhous leucorhous (Vieillot)

Leach's Storm Petrel

Synonym added: *Hydrobates leucorhous leucorhous* (Vieillot); Dickinson & Remsen 2013, *Howard & Moore Complete Checklist Birds World*, 4th edition, 1: 174.

Family PROCELLARIIDAE Leach: Fulmars, Petrels, Prions, and Shearwaters

Genus *Macronectes* Richmond

Ossifraga Hombron & Jacquinot, 1844: *Compt. Rend. Séa. Acad. Sci., Paris* 18: 356 – Type species (by monotypy) *Procellaria gigantea* Gmelin. Junior homonym of *Ossifraga* Wood, 1835.

Macronectes Richmond, 1905: *Proc. Biol. Soc. Washington* 18: 76. *Nomen novum* for *Ossifraga* Hombron & Jacquinot, 1844.

► ***Macronectes giganteus*** (Gmelin)

Southern Giant Petrel | Pāngurunguru*

Text added: Salomon & Voisin (2010) advocated treating *M. giganteus* as polytypic, with subspecies *solanderi* breeding in Argentina, Falkland Islands, and Gough Island. We follow Dickinson & Remsen (2013), Clements *et al.* (2019), and F. Gill *et al.* (2021) in treating *M. giganteus* as monotypic, pending further research.

*Also used for northern giant petrel *M. halli*.

Genus *Fulmarus* Stephens

New vagrant species and subspecies added before *Fulmarus glacialisoides*:

► ***Fulmarus glacialis*** (Linnaeus)

Northern Fulmar

Procellaria glacialis Linnaeus, 1761: *Fauna Svecica, 2nd edition*: 51 – Spitsbergen, Arctic Circle.

Fulmarus glacialis (Linnaeus); Stephens 1826: in Shaw, *General Zool.* 13(1): 234, pl. 27.

Fulmaris glacialis; Johnston & Mitchell 2021, *Diversity* 13, 538: 13. Unjustified emendation.

Breeds on numerous islands and coastal cliffs at high latitudes in the Northern Hemisphere. Three subspecies: *F. g. glacialis* nesting in High Arctic from north-east Canada east to Svalbard and Franz Josef Land; *F. g. auduboni* Bonaparte, 1857 nesting on shores of North Atlantic at lower latitudes from south-east Canada east to western and northern Europe; *F. g. rodgersii* nesting in North Pacific from eastern Siberia to south-east Alaska (Dickinson & Remsen 2013).

***Fulmarus glacialis rodgersii* Cassin**

Pacific Northern Fulmar

Fulmarus Rodgersii Cassin, 1862: *Proc. Acad. Nat. Sci. Philad.* 14: 326 – “South Indian Ocean” (error, North Pacific Ocean; *fide* Deignan 1961, *Bull. U.S. Nat. Mus.* 221: 9).

Fulmarus glacialis rodgersii Cassin; Coues 1882: *Checklist North American Birds*: 125.

Fulmarus glacialis columba Anthony, 1895: *Auk* 12(2): 105 – off San Diego, California.

Fulmarus ródgersi [sic] Cassin; American Ornithologists Union 1910, *Check-list North Amer. Birds (3rd edition)*: 51. Unjustified emendation.

Breeds on many islands and coastal cliffs around Bering Sea to southern Alaska, including Wrangel Island, Chukchi and Kamchatka Peninsulas, Kuril, Commander, Pribilof, St Lawrence, and Aleutian Islands, migrating south to seas off Japan and California and (exceptionally) Mexico (Howell 2012; Dickinson & Remsen 2013). A bird at sea east of the Snares Islands in Feb. 2014 was the first record from New Zealand and the Southern Hemisphere (Miskelly *et al.* 2017).

Genus *Daption* Stephens

► ***Daption capense*** (Linnaeus)

Cape Petrel | Karetai Hurukoko

Text added: A capital ‘C’ should be used for the common name Cape petrel regardless of editorial style, as it is named after the Cape of Good Hope (the type locality).

Genus *Pterodroma* Bonaparte

► ***Pterodroma gouldi*** (Hutton)

Grey-faced Petrel | Ōi

Pterodroma macroptera gouldi (Hutton); Mathews & Iredale 1913, *Ibis* 1 (10th ser.): 230.

Pterodroma gouldi (Hutton); Onley & Scofield 2007, *Albatrosses, Petrels & Shearwaters World*: 183.

Text added: Treated by Checklist Committee (2010) as a subspecies of great-winged petrel *Pterodroma macroptera* (A. Smith, 1840), these taxa are now recognised as separate species based on the review by Wood, Lawrence *et al.* (2017).

► ***Pterodroma solandri*** (Gould)

Providence Petrel

Synonym deleted: *Fulmarus (Astrelata) Philippii* (G.R. Gray) is now understood to be a synonym of *Pterodroma heraldica* (refer that species).

► ***Pterodroma magentae*** (Giglioli & Salvadori)

Chatham Island Taiko | Tāiko*

Text added: A capital ‘M’ should be used for the alternative common name Magenta petrel regardless of editorial style, as the species is named after the Italian Navy corvette *Magenta*.

*Also used for Westland petrel *Procellaria westlandica* and black petrel *P. parkinsoni*.

New vagrant species added after *Pterodroma neglecta*:

► ***Pterodroma heraldica*** (Salvin)

Herald Petrel

Procellaria leucoptera Schlegel, 1863: *Rev. Méth. Critique. Mus. d'Hist. Nat. PaysBas* 6(22): 12. Not *Procellaria leucoptera* Gould, 1844.

Fulmarus (Astrelata) Philippii G.R. Gray, 1871: *Hand-list Birds* 3: 106 – Chesterfield Group. Not *Procellaria philippii* G.R. Gray, 1862.

Oestrelata heraldica Salvin, 1888: *Ibis* 6 (5th ser.): 357 – Chesterfield Islands, north-west of New Caledonia.

Pterodroma (Aestrelata) heraldica paschae Lonnberg, 1921: in Skottsberg, *Nat. Hist. Juan Fernandez Easter Islands* 3: 23 – Easter Island.

Pterodroma heraldica (Salvin); Peters 1931, *Checklist Birds World* 1: 63.

Aestrelata heraldica (Salvin); Murphy & Pennoyer 1952, *American Mus. Novit.* 1580: 38.

Pterodroma arminjoniana heraldica (Salvin); Jouanin & Mougin 1979, in Peters, *Check-list Birds World* 1 (2nd edition): 71.

Pterodroma (Hallstroma) heraldica (Salvin); Imber 1985: *Ibis* 127: 224.

Pterodroma (arminjoniana) heraldica Salvin; Imber 2004: *Notornis* 51: 33.

We follow Brooke (2004) and Onley & Scofield (2007) in recognising the Herald petrel as a full species, which breeds on several Pacific island groups between 9° and 27°S. A bird photographed near the Meyer Islets, Kermadec Islands / Rangitāhua in Mar. 2016 was the first record from New Zealand (Miskelly *et al.* 2017).

A capital ‘H’ should be used for the common name Herald petrel regardless of editorial style, as it is named after the British survey vessel *HMS Herald*.

New (extinct) species added after *Pterodroma mollis*:

➤ †**Pterodroma imberi** Tennyson, Cooper & Shepherd

Imber's Petrel

Pterodroma inexpectata (J.R. Forster); Bourne 1967, *Ibis* 109: 57. In part.

Pterodroma inexpectata (J.R. Forster); Checklist Committee 1990, *Checklist Birds N.Z.*: 51. In part.

Pterodroma sp. 1 Tennyson & Millener, 1994: *Notornis* 41 (supp.): 168.

Pterodroma sp. 1 Holdaway *et al.* 2001: *N.Z. Journ. Zool.* 28: 128.

Pterodroma imberi Tennyson, Cooper & Shepherd, 2015: *Bull. Brit. Ornith. Club* 135: 273– Pitt Island, Chatham Islands.

This extinct species is known only from Holocene remains (natural and archaeological) on the Chatham Islands (Tennyson *et al.* 2015).

➤ **Pterodroma cervicalis** (Salvin)

White-naped Petrel

Text added: Treated here as monotypic following Imber & Tennyson (2001); however, the Vanuatu petrel (*Pt. occulta* Imber & Tennyson, 2001) is often treated as a subspecies of *Pt. cervicalis* (see Shirihi & Bretagnolle 2010; Dickinson & Remsen 2013; Howell & Zufelt 2019; Handbook of the Birds of the World and BirdLife International 2020).

➤ **Pterodroma cookii** (G.R. Gray)

Cook's Petrel

We follow Rayner *et al.* (2021) in recognising two subspecies of Cook's petrel. The text for this species should be replaced with the following:

➤ **Pterodroma cookii** (G.R. Gray)

Cook's Petrel | Titi*

Procellaria Cookii G.R. Gray, 1843: in E. Dieffenbach, *Travels in N.Z.* 2: 199 – New Zealand, restricted to Mangaoraka Stream near Kaimiro, north Taranaki (*fide* Medway 2004, *Notornis* 51: 155).

Breeds only in New Zealand, in two breeding populations separated by c. 1,300 km. Both populations migrate to the eastern Pacific Ocean outside the breeding season. Formerly bred on mainland North and South Islands (Imber *et al.* 2003). North Island midden remains and Late Pleistocene–Holocene bones from the North and South Islands (Millener 1991; Worthy & Holdaway 2002; Worthy *et al.* 2002). Two subspecies.

*Also used for other petrel species including grey-faced petrel *Pt. gouldi* and sooty shearwater *Ardenna grisea*.

Pterodroma cookii cookii (G.R. Gray)

Northern Cook's Petrel

Procellaria Cookii G.R. Gray, 1843: in E. Dieffenbach, *Travels in N.Z.* 2: 199 – New Zealand, restricted to Mangaoraka Stream near Kaimiro, north Taranaki (*fide* Medway 2004, *Notornis* 51: 155).

Procellaria velox G.R. Gray, 1844: *Gen. Birds* 3: 648 (ex Solander MS) – no locality = Southern Ocean (*fide* Mathews 1912, *Birds Australia* 2: 169). Junior primary homonym of *Procellaria velox* Kuhl, 1820.

Rhantistes cookii (G.R. Gray); Bonaparte 1856, *Compt. Rend. Séa. Acad. Sci., Paris* 42: 768.

Rhantistes velox (G.R. Gray); Bonaparte 1856, *Compt. Rend. Séa. Acad. Sci., Paris* 42: 768.

Cookilaria leucoptera (Gould); Bonaparte 1857, *Consp. Gen. Avium* 2: 190. In part.

Cookilaria velox (G.R. Gray); Bonaparte 1857, *Consp. Gen. Avium* 2: 190.

Procellaria cookii G.R. Gray; G.R. Gray 1862, *Ibis* 4: 246.

Aestrelata Cookii (G.R. Gray); Coues 1866, *Proc. Acad. Nat. Sci. Philad.* 18: 152.

Fulmarus (Cookilaria) Cookii (G.R. Gray); G.R. Gray 1871, *Hand-list Birds* 3: 106.

Oestrelata cookii (G.R. Gray); Buller 1888 (Mar.), *History of the Birds of N.Z.*, 2nd edition 2 (part 6): 217.

Oestrelata cooki (G.R. Gray); Salvin 1896, *Cat. Birds Brit. Mus.* 25: 417. Unjustified emendation.

Pterodroma cookii cookii (G.R. Gray); Mathews 1912, *Birds Australia* 2: 166.

Cookilaria cookii cookii (G.R. Gray); Mathews & Iredale 1913, *Ibis* 1 (10th ser.): 233.

Cookilaria cookii (G.R. Gray); Mathews 1920, *Austral Avian Rec.* 4: 67.

Pterodroma cooki; Falla 1922, *Emu* 21: 207. Unjustified emendation.

Pterodroma (Cookilaria) cookii (G.R. Gray); C.A. Fleming 1941, *Emu* 41: 75.

Pterodroma (Cookilaria) cookii cookii (G.R. Gray); Falla 1942, *Emu* 42: 115.

Bulweria cooki (G.R. Gray); Mathews 1948, *Bull. Brit. Ornith. Club* 68: 156. Unjustified emendation.

Pterodroma cooki cooki (G.R. Gray); Checklist Committee 1953, *Checklist N.Z. Birds*: 25. Unjustified emendation.

Pterodroma cookii (G.R. Gray); Jouanin & Mougin 1979, in Peters, *Check-list Birds World 1* (2nd edition): 77.

Breeds on Hauturu / Little Barrier and Great Barrier / Aotea Islands (Imber *et al.* 2003; Rayner *et al.* 2007). During the breeding season, ranges mainly east of the North Island and into the northern Tasman Sea (Rayner, Hauber *et al.* 2008). Migrates to the eastern Pacific Ocean, mainly between the equator and 40°N (Rayner *et al.* 2011).

Pterodroma cookii orientalis Murphy

Southern Cook's Petrel

Pterodroma cookii orientalis Murphy, 1929: *American Mus. Novit.* 370: 5 – 200 miles west of Callao, Peru.

Cookilaria cookii orientalis (Murphy); Mathews 1934, *Novit. Zool.* 39(2): 171.

Breeds on Codfish Island / Whenua Hou (Imber *et al.* 2003; Rayner, Parker *et al.* 2008). During the breeding season, ranges mainly into the southern Tasman Sea (Rayner, Hauber *et al.* 2008). Migrates to the eastern Pacific Ocean, mainly between the equator and 30°S (Rayner *et al.* 2011).

► **Pterodroma leucoptera** (Gould)

Gould's Petrel

Text added: Portelli (2016) recommended that no subspecies be recognised; however, we consider that there are sufficient morphological, ecological and behavioural differences between the two populations to continue recognition of two subspecies.

New vagrant species added after *Pterodroma leucoptera*:

► **Pterodroma brevipes** (Peale)

Collared Petrel

Procellaria brevipes Peale, 1848: *U.S. Expl. Exped.* 8: 294, 337, pl. 80 – “latitude 68°S, longitude 95°W.” but probably Samoa Islands (*fide* Bourne 1967, *Ibis* 109: 155).

Procellaria Cookii Cassin, 1858: *U.S. Expl. Exped.*: 414 – “nearer the continent of America”. Not *Procellaria Cookii* G.R. Gray, 1843.

Procellaria torquata Macgillivray, 1860: *Zool. 18*: 7133 – Aneiteum Island, New Hebrides (= Vanuatu).

Procellaria desolata Schlegel, 1863: *Rev. méth. critique. Mus. d'Hist. Nat. PaysBas* 6(22): 13. Not *Procellaria desolata* Gmelin, 1789.

Fulmarus aneiteimensis G.R. Gray, 1871: *Hand-list Birds* 3: 107. *Nomen nudum*.

Oestrelata leucoptera Salvin, 1876: *Ibis* 6: 393. – Fiji Islands. Not *Procellaria leucoptera* Gould, 1844.

Procellaria caerulea Layard, 1876: *Proc. Zool. Soc. London* 1876: 498 – Fiji Islands. Not *Procellaria caerulea* Gmelin, 1789.

Aestrelata leucoptera Ridgway, 1887: *Man. North Amer. Birds*: 65. Not *Procellaria leucoptera* Gould, 1844.

Oestrelata torquata (Macgillivray); Salvin 1888, *Ibis* 6 (5th ser.): 359.

Aestrelata brevipes (Peale); Stejneger, 1893: *Proc. U.S. Nat. Mus.* 16: 617.

Oestrelata brevipes (Peale); Salvin, 1896: *Cat. Birds Brit. Mus.* 25: 408.

Pterodroma leucoptera brevipes (Peale); Jouanin & Mougin 1979, in Peters, *Check-list Birds World 1* (2nd edition): 78.

Pterodroma (Cookilaria) brevipes (Peale); Imber 1985: *Ibis* 127: 224.

Pterodroma brevipes magnifica Bretagnolle & Shirihi, 2010: *Bull. Brit. Ornith. Club* 130: 288.

Pterodroma brevipes brevipes (Peale); Bretagnolle & Shirihi 2010, *Bull. Brit. Ornith. Club* 130: 300.

Breeds on islands in Vanuatu (Tanna, Erromango, and Vanua Lava, possibly Aneityum and Gaua) and Fiji (Kadavu and Gau, possibly Ovalau, Taveuni, Koro, Moala, Totoya, Vanuabalavu, and Matuku). Possibly also breeds in the Solomon Islands, Rarotonga, Moorea, Tahiti, Mangareva Island (Gambier Islands), Samoa, and American Samoa (Tennyson *et al.* 2012; O'Brien *et al.* 2016). Vagrant to seas near the Three Kings Islands: Mar. 2011 and Mar. 2019 (Miskelly *et al.* 2021). The reported occurrence of a possible specimen from New Zealand (Clarkson & Walker 2001) is incorrect – the specimen (NMNZ OR.028682) is a mottled petrel (*Pt. inexpectata*).

Genus **Pachyptila** Illiger

► **Pachyptila salvini** (Mathews)

Salvin's Prion

Subspecies are no longer recognised for Salvin's prion, as the Checklist Committee considers MacGillivray's prion (*P. macgillivrayi*) to be a full species (see Bretagnolle *et al.* 1990; Worthy & Jouventin 1999; Shirihi 2002; Onley & Scofield 2007; Dilley *et al.* 2015; BirdLife International 2021; Jones *et al.* 2021).

New genus inserted after genus *Calonectris*:

Genus *Ardenna* Reichenbach

- Ardenna* Reichenbach, 1853: *Hand. Spec. Ornith.* 3: iv – Type species (by original designation and monotypy) *Puffinus major* (Faber) = *Ardenna gravis* (O'Reilly).
- Thyellodroma* Stejneger, 1888: *Proc. U.S. Nat. Mus.* 11: 93 – Type species (by original designation) *Puffinus sphenurus* Gould = *Ardenna chlororhynchus* (Lesson).
- Zalias* Heine & Reichenow, 1890: *Nom. Mus. Hein. Ornith.*: 362 – Type species (by subsequent designation) *Puffinus chlororhynchus* Lesson = *Ardenna chlororhynchus* (Lesson).
- Neonectris* Mathews, 1913: *Austral Avian Rec.* 2: 12 – Type species (by original designation) *Puffinus brevicaudus* Gould = *Ardenna tenuirostris* (Temminck).
- Hemipuffinus* Iredale, 1913: *Austral Avian Rec.* 2: 20 – Type species (by original designation) *Puffinus carneipes* Gould = *Ardenna carneipes* (Gould).
- Paranectris* Iredale, 1930: *Australian Zool.* 6(2): 115 – Type species (by original designation) *Procellaria grisea* Gmelin = *Ardenna grisea* (Gmelin).

We follow Chesser *et al.* (2016) in placing the larger species of shearwaters in genus *Ardenna* (rather than *Puffinus*) based on genetic evidence that shearwaters form two deeply divergent clades that may not be sister groups (Penhallurick & Wink 2004; Austin *et al.* 2004; Pyle *et al.* 2011). Species sequence follows Pyle *et al.* (2011).

Replace scientific names and authorities for the following 7 species and 2 subspecies:

➤ <i>Ardenna pacifica</i> (Gmelin)	Wedge-tailed Shearwater
<i>Ardenna pacifica pacifica</i> (Gmelin)	Wedge-tailed Shearwater
<i>Ardenna pacifica chlororhyncha</i> (Lesson)	Wedge-tailed Shearwater
➤ <i>Ardenna bulleri</i> (Salvin)	Buller's Shearwater Rako
➤ <i>Ardenna tenuirostris</i> (Temminck)	Short-tailed Shearwater
➤ <i>Ardenna grisea</i> (Gmelin)	Sooty Shearwater Tītī
➤ <i>Ardenna gravis</i> (O'Reilly)	Great Shearwater
➤ <i>Ardenna creatopus</i> (Coues)	Pink-footed Shearwater
➤ <i>Ardenna carneipes</i> (Gould)	Flesh-footed Shearwater Toanui

Genus *Puffinus* Brisson

➤ <i>Puffinus nativitatis</i> Streets	Christmas Island Shearwater
<i>Puffinus (Nectris) nativitatis</i> Streets, 1877: <i>Bull. U.S. Nat. Mus.</i> 7: 29 – Christmas Island (= Kiritimati), Pacific Ocean.	
Dickinson & Remsen (2013: 179) used the common name “Christmas shearwater” but were incorrect in stating that the bird was named after the date of discovery; it was collected on Christmas Island [now Kiritimati] in Jan. 1874 (Christopher Milensky, Smithsonian Institution, <i>pers. comm.</i> 2016), therefore “Christmas Island” shearwater remains an appropriate name.	

➤ <i>Puffinus auricularis</i> Townsend	Townsend's Shearwater
<i>Puffinus auricularis</i> C.H. Townsend, 1890: <i>Proc. U.S. Nat. Mus.</i> 13: 133 – Clarion Island (Isla Clarión), Revillagigedo Islands, Mexico.	

We follow Dickinson & Remsen (2013) and Martínez-Gómez *et al.* (2015) in treating Newell's shearwater as a subspecies of *Puffinus auricularis*.

<i>Puffinus auricularis newelli</i> Henshaw	Newell's Shearwater
<i>Puffinus newelli</i> Henshaw, 1900: <i>Auk</i> 17: 246 – Waihee Valley, Ulani [= Maui Island], Hawai'iian Islands, Pacific Ocean.	
<i>Puffinus puffinus newelli</i> Henshaw; Mathews 1934, <i>Novit. Zool.</i> 39(2): 179.	
<i>Puffinus auricularis newelli</i> Henshaw; Jehl 1982, <i>Le Gerfaut</i> 72: 130.	
<i>Puffinus newelli</i> Henshaw; Taylor 1996, <i>Notornis</i> 43: 188.	

Genus **Pelecanoides** La Cépède

► **Pelecanoides georgicus** Murphy & Harper

South Georgian Diving Petrel

Text added: We follow Clements *et al.* (2019) and F. Gill *et al.* (2021) in recognising two subspecies, both of which occur in New Zealand. The subspecific identity of birds that formerly bred on Enderby Island (Auckland Islands), Stewart Island, Otago Peninsula, and Chatham Island is unknown (see Worthy 1998c; Wood & Briden 2008; Miskelly *et al.* 2020; Tennyson 2020).

Pelecanoides georgicus georgicus Murphy & Harper

South Georgian Diving Petrel

Pelecanoides georgica Murphy & Harper, 1916: *Bull. Am. Mus. Nat. Hist.* 35: 66 – Cumberland Bay, South Georgia, south Atlantic Ocean.

Pelecanoides urinatrix georgica Murphy & Harper; Bennett 1926, *Ibis* 2 (12th series): 317.

Pelagodytes georgicus (Murphy & Harper); Mathews 1934, *Novit. Zool.* 39(2): 198.

Pelagodytes georgicus georgicus (Murphy & Harper); Mathews, 1935, *Novit. Zool.* 39(3): (page unnumbered) Additions to the keys.

Pelagodytes georgicus novus Mathews, 1935: *Novit. Zool.* 39(3): Additions to the keys – Pacific Ocean, restricted to Macquarie Island (*fide* Mathews & Iredale 1943, *Notes Procellariiformes*: 62).

Pelecanoides georgicus Murphy [sic]; Mathews 1948, *Bull. Brit. Ornith. Club* 68: 157.

Pelecanoides georgicus georgicus Murphy & Harper; Clark & Dingwall 1985, *Cons. Islands Southern Ocean*: 68.

Pelecanoides georgicus Murphy & Harper; Checklist Committee 1990, *Checklist Birds N.Z.*: 33.

Pelecanoides exsul; Scofield & Stephenson 2013, *Birds N.Z. Photographic Guide*. 1st edition: 204. Not *Pelecanoides exsul* Salvin, 1896.

Pelecanoides whenuahouensis; Fischer, Debski, Miskelly, Bost, Fromant, Tennyson, Tessler, Cole, Hiscock, Taylor & Wittmer 2018, *PLOS one* 13(doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0197766): 14 (in part).

Breeds on South Georgia, Marion, Prince Edward, Crozet, Kerguelen, and Heard Islands (Marchant & Higgins 1990). Near to New Zealand, a few pairs on the Bishop and Clerk Islets and Macquarie Island (Brothers & Ledingham 2008; Brothers & Bone 2008). One confirmed breeding record from New Zealand (NMNZ OR.21631, Dundas Island, Auckland Islands, Oct. 1943; Miskelly *et al.* 2020; Grosser *et al.* 2021). This specimen was listed as a paratype of *P. whenuahouensis* (Fischer *et al.* 2018) before being genotyped as *P. georgicus georgicus* (see Grosser *et al.* 2021). Therefore, the original description of *P. whenuahouensis* included both subspecies.

Pelecanoides georgicus whenuahouensis Fischer, Debski, Miskelly, Bost, Fromant, Tennyson, Tessler, Cole, Hiscock, Taylor & Wittmer

Whenua Hou Diving Petrel | Kuaka Whenua Hou

Pelecanoides georgicus Murphy & Harper; Checklist Committee 1990, *Checklist Birds N.Z.*: 33. In part.

Pelecanoides exsul; Scofield & Stephenson 2013, *Birds N.Z. Photographic Guide*. 1st edition: 204. Not *Pelecanoides exsul* Salvin, 1896.

Pelecanoides whenuahouensis Fischer, Debski, Miskelly, Bost, Fromant, Tennyson, Tessler, Cole, Hiscock, Taylor & Wittmer, 2018: *PLOS One* 13(doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0197766): 14 – Codfish Island / Whenua Hou.

Pelecanoides georgicus whenuahouensis Fischer, Debski, Miskelly, Bost, Fromant, Tennyson, Tessler, Cole, Hiscock, Taylor & Wittmer; Miskelly & Taylor 2020, *Notornis* 67: 43.

Described as a full species by Fischer *et al.* (2018). A subsequent genetic study by Grosser *et al.* (2021) revealed that one of the paratypes (a breeding female from Dundas Island, Auckland Islands) was *P. georgicus sensu stricto*, and that *whenuahouensis* was little differentiated from *P. georgicus* (genetic distance 0.006; cf. 0.005 to 0.027 between subspecies of *P. urinatrix*). We therefore follow Clements *et al.* (2019) and F. Gill *et al.* (2021) in treating *whenuahouensis* as a subspecies of *P. georgicus* pending a wider phylogenetic study of the genus.

New order inserted before Pelecaniformes:

Order SULIFORMES: Frigatebirds, Gannets, Darters, and Cormorants

We follow the recommendations of Ericson *et al.* (2006), Hackett *et al.* (2008), Burleigh *et al.* (2015), Prum *et al.* (2015), and Kuhl *et al.* (2021) in separating this clade of waterbirds from Pelecaniformes. We follow Bock (1994), Clements *et al.* (2019), and Chesser *et al.* (2020) in using the name Suliformes. The family sequence follows Clements *et al.* (2019) and Chesser *et al.* (2020): Fregatidae, Sulidae, Anhingidae, Phalacrocoracidae.

Family FREGATIDAE Degland & Gerbe: Frigatebirds

Genus **Fregata** La Cépède

➤ <i>Fregata minor</i> (Gmelin)	Great Frigatebird
--	--------------------------

<i>Fregata minor palmerstoni</i> (Gmelin)	Great Frigatebird
--	--------------------------

Buller (1869) stated that the first specimen of great frigatebird from New Zealand was obtained at Whakapuaka (=Wakapuaka), Nelson, in 1855. However, he subsequently amended this date to 1861 (Buller 1873, 1882, 1887–88). Buller's use of two different dates for the same specimen has caused confusion ever since, including in the first four editions of the *Checklist of the birds of New Zealand*, where the first three editions gave the date of the earliest record as 1861, and the 2010 (4th) edition gave the date as 1855. The correct date is (3 Mar.) 1861, based on information in the 9 Mar. 1861 issue of *The Nelson Examiner* (p.2) accessed via Papers Past.

Family SULIDAE Reichenbach: Gannets and Boobies

Genus **Sula** Brisson

New vagrant species and two subspecies added before *Sula leucogaster*:

➤ <i>Sula sula</i> (Linnaeus)	Red-footed Booby
--------------------------------------	-------------------------

Pelecanus Sula Linnaeus, 1766, *Syst. Nat.*, 12th edition, 1: 218 – “in Pelago indicus” = Barbados, West Indies (*fide* Grant & Mackworth-Praed 1933, *Bull. Brit. Ornith. Club* 53: 187).

Sula sula (Linnaeus); Verreaux & Des Murs 1860: *Rev. et Mag. de Zool.*: 442.

Three subspecies are recognised: *S. s. sula* breeding in the West Indies, Hispaniola, Puerto Rico, Virgin Islands, Dominica, Grenadines, Belize, Venezuela, on Fernando de Noronha, and possibly Ascension Island; *S. s. rubripes* breeding on many Indian Ocean and Pacific Ocean islands; *S. s. websteri* breeding on Revillagigedo Islands off Mexico, Cocos Island off Costa Rica, and Galápagos Islands (Dorst & Mougin 1979). Four records from New Zealand (Miskelly, Crossland *et al.* 2021). The first birds of this species from New Zealand (two at the Kermadec Islands / Rangitāhua in Mar.–Apr. 2016; Miskelly, Crossland *et al.* 2017) were not identified to subspecies.

F. Hutton (1871: 49) listed “*Dysporus piscator* L. – red-legged gannet”, but the taxon *Pelecanus piscator* Linnaeus, 1758 is a *nomen dubium*. Therefore, Hutton’s citation cannot be assigned to any subspecies of *Sula sula*.

<i>Sula sula rubripes</i> Gould	Indo-Pacific Red-footed Booby
--	--------------------------------------

Sula rubripes Gould, 1838: *Synop. Birds Australia* 4, App.: 7 – “New South Wales” = Raine Island, northern Queensland (*fide* Mathews 1915, *Birds Australia* 4: 210).

Sula nicolli Grant & Mackworth-Praed, 1933: *Bull. Brit. Ornith. Club* 53: 118 – Gloriosa Island, Indian Ocean.

Sula sula rubripes Gould; del Hoyo *et al.* 1992: *Handb. Birds World* 1: 325.

A bird considered to be of this subspecies was found dead on Pakatoa Island, Hauraki Gulf, in May 2017 (Miskelly *et al.* 2021; Auckland Museum specimen LB15822).

<i>Sula sula websteri</i> Rothschild	Eastern Pacific Red-footed Booby
---	---

Sula websteri Rothschild, 1898: *Bull. Brit. Ornith. Club* 54: 52 – “Clarion Island, Galapagos and the neighbouring seas” = Clarion Island, Revillagigedo Islands (*fide* Dorst & Mougin 1979, *in* Peters, *Check-list Birds World* 1 (2nd edition): 186).

Sula piscatrix websteri Rothschild; Beebe 1951, *Galápagos: World's End*, 2nd edition: 323, fig. 70.

Sula sula websteri Rothschild; del Hoyo *et al.* 1992: *Handb. Birds World* 1: 325.

A bird considered to be of this subspecies was present at the Muriwai gannet colony, west Auckland, for 5 weeks in early 2017 (Miskelly *et al.* 2019).

Family PHALACROCORACIDAE Reichenbach: Cormorants and Shags | Kawau

We follow the classification system proposed by Kennedy & Spencer (2014). This includes placement of little shag in the genus *Microcarbo*, and placement of spotted shag and Pitt Island shag in the genus *Phalacrocorax*.

New genus inserted before *Phalacrocorax*:

Genus **Microcarbo** Bonaparte

Microcarbo Bonaparte, 1855: *Consp. Av.* 2: 177. *Nomen nudum*.

Microcarbo Bonaparte, 1856: *Compt. Rend. Séa. Acad. Sci., Paris* 43: 577 – Type species (by original designation) *Pelecanus pygmaeus* Pallas = *Microcarbo pygmaeus* (Pallas).

Haliëtor Heine, 1860: *Journ. für Ornith.* 8: 202 – Type species (by original designation) *Pelecanus pygmaeus* Pallas = *Microcarbo pygmaeus* (Pallas).

The findings of Kennedy & Spencer (2014) support several earlier studies (see Checklist Committee 2010; Holland *et al.* 2010; Worthy 2011) that *Microcarbo* is a distinct genus. Therefore we no longer consider the little pied cormorant and the little shag to be part of *Phalacrocorax*.

Genus *Phalacrocorax* Brisson

Synonyms added:

Stictocarbo Bonaparte, 1855: *Compt. Rend. Séa. Acad. Sci., Paris* 41: 1115 – Type species (by subsequent designation) *Pelecanus punctatus* Sparrman = *Phalacrocorax punctatus* (Sparrman).

Enygothères Heine & Reichenow, 1890: *Nom. Mus. Hein. Ornith.*: 353 – Type species (by original designation) *Pelecanus punctatus* Sparrman = *Phalacrocorax punctatus* (Sparrman).

Synonyms deleted:

Microcarbo Bonaparte, 1856: *Compt. Rend. Séa. Acad. Sci., Paris* 43: 577 – Type species (by original designation) *Pelecanus pygmaeus* Pallas = *Microcarbo pygmaeus* (Pallas).

Haliëtor Heine, 1860: *Journ. für Ornith.* 8: 202 – Type species (by original designation) *Pelecanus pygmaeus* Pallas = *Microcarbo pygmaeus* (Pallas).

► *Phalacrocorax punctatus* (Sparrman)

Spotted Shag | Kawau Tikitiki

Synonyms amended or added:

Phalacrocorax punctatus; Ogilvie-Grant 1905, *Ibis* 5 (8th ser.): 567. Not *Pelecanus punctatus* Sparrman, 1786.

Stictocarbo steadi Oliver, 1930: *Trans. N.Z. Inst.* 61: 139 – Otago. Junior secondary homonym of *Carbo steadi* Mathews & Iredale, 1913.

Stictocarbo [punctatus] steadi Oliver; Mathews 1931, *Ibis* 1 (13th ser.): 45.

Phalacrocorax oliveri Mathews, 1931: *Bull. Brit. Ornith. Club* 51: 18. *Nomen novum* for *Stictocarbo steadi* Oliver, 1930.

Phalacrocorax punctatus oliveri Mathews, 1930 [sic]; Peters 1931, *Check-list Birds World* 1: 92.

Phalacrocorax (Stictocarbo) punctatus steadi (Oliver); Checklist Committee 1953, *Checklist N.Z. Birds*: 31. Not *Carbo steadi* Mathews & Iredale, 1913.

Stictocarbo punctatus steadi Oliver; Checklist Committee 1970, *Ann. Checklist Birds N.Z.*: 33. Not *Carbo steadi* Mathews & Iredale, 1913.

Leucocarbo punctatus oliveri (Mathews); Johnsgard 1993, *Cormorants, Darters and Pelicans*: 315.

Stictocarbo punctatus oliveri (Mathews); Tennyson & Bartle 2008, *Tuhinga* 19: 195.

We follow Rawlence *et al.* (2019) in not recognising any subspecies of spotted shag (i.e. blue shag *P. p. oliveri* is no longer recognised). Text on the validity of *Stictocarbo steadi* Oliver, 1930 has been deleted.

► *Phalacrocorax featherstoni* Buller

Pitt Island Shag | Kawau o Rangihauta

Phalacrocorax featherstoni Buller, 1873: *Ibis* 3 (3rd series): 90 – Chatham Islands.

Genus *Leucocarbo* Bonaparte

The species sequence is based on phylogenetic trees in Rawlence, Till *et al.* (2017) and Rawlence *et al.* (2022): *L. ranfurlyi*, *L. septentrionalis*, *L. carunculatus*, *L. onslowi*, *L. chalconotus*, *L. stewarti*, *L. colensoi*, *L. campbelli*, *L. purpurascens*.

New (extinct) species added after *Leucocarbo ranfurlyi*:

► †*Leucocarbo septentrionalis* Rawlence, Till, Easton, Spencer, Schuckard, Melville, Scofield, Tennyson, Rayner, Waters & Kennedy

Kohatu Shag | Kawau Kōhatu

Leucocarbo carunculatus; Worthy 1996, *New Zealand Journ. Zool.* 23(1): 95. Not *Pelecanus carunculatus* Gmelin, 1789.

Leucocarbo septentrionalis Rawlence, Till, Easton, Spencer, Schuckard, Melville, Scofield, Tennyson, Rayner, Waters & Kennedy, 2017: *Molec. Phylogen. Evolution* 115: 207 – Tokerau Beach, Doubtless Bay, Northland.

This extinct species was described by Rawlence, Till *et al.* (2017). It is known only from coastal Holocene bone deposits in Northland (Rawlence, Till *et al.* 2017). The Māori name should have a macron as shown here (and as gifted by Ngāti Kuri) – use of a macron was not permitted in the journal where the species was first named.

► *Leucocarbo chalconotus* (G.R. Gray)

Otago Shag | Matapo

Graucalus auritus; G.R. Gray 1843, *in* E. Dieffenbach, *Travels in N.Z.* 2: 201. Not *Carbo auritus* Lesson, 1831.

Graculus chalconotus G.R. Gray, 1845: *in* Richardson & J.E. Gray (*Eds*), *Zool. Voy. 'Erebus' & 'Terror'*, *Birds* 1(8): 20, pl. 21 – Otago.

Graculus glaucus Reichenbach, 1850: *Avium Syst. Nat.*: pl. 49, fig. 2553. Based on the “Cormoran glauque” of Hombron & Jacquinot, 1845 *in* Dumont d’Urville, *Voyage Pôle Sud, Zoologie*, Atlas pl. 31, fig. 1 – Otago.

Phalacrocorax glaucus Hombron & Jacquinot; Pucheran 1853, *in* Dumont d’Urville, *Voyage Pôle Sud, Zoologie*, 3: 127.

Graculus chalconotus (G.R. Gray); G.R. Gray 1862, *Ibis* 4: 252.

Phalacrocorax chalconotus (G.R. Gray); Buller 1873 (Mar.), *History of the Birds of N.Z.*, 1st edition (part 5): 334.

Phalacrocorax glaucus Hombron & Jacquinot; Buller 1888 (Mar.), *History of the Birds of N.Z.*, 2nd edition 2 (part 5): 163.

Phalacrocorax huttoni Buller, 1888 (Mar.): *History of the Birds of N.Z.*, 2nd edition 2 (part 5): 174 – near Dunedin.

Hypoleucus chalconotus (G.R. Gray); Mathews & Iredale 1913, *Ibis* 1 (10th ser.): 413.

Hypoleucus huttoni (Buller); Mathews 1936, *Suppl. Birds Norfolk & Lord Howe Islands*: 141.
Phalacrocorax (Leucocarbo) carunculatus chalconotus (G.R. Gray); Checklist Committee 1953, *Checklist N.Z. Birds*: 29. In part.
Leucocarbo carunculatus chalconotus (G.R. Gray); Checklist Committee 1970, *Annot. Checklist Birds N.Z.*: 32. In part.
Leucocarbo chalconotus (G.R. Gray); van Tets 1976, *Proc. 16th International Ornith. Congress*: 122.
Phalacrocorax carunculatus chalconotus (G.R. Gray); Dorst & Mougin 1979, in Peters, *Check-list Birds World 1* (2nd edition): 176.
Euleucocarbo chalconotus (G.R. Gray); Siegel-Causey 1988, *Condor* 90: 892.
Leucocarbo chalconotus (G.R. Gray); Checklist Committee 1990, *Checklist Birds N.Z.*: 83. In part.
Phalacrocorax chalconotus (G.R. Gray); Marchant & Higgins 1990, *HANZAB 1*: 876. In part.
Leucocarbo (carunculatus) chalconotus (G.R. Gray); Johnsgard 1993, *Cormorants, Darters and Pelicans*: 271.

Inhabits coastal waters and breeds only from near Oamaru south to The Sisters, Catlins coast (Rawlence *et al.* 2016). Ranges north to Banks Peninsula (Crossland 2021). Midden and Late Pleistocene or Holocene bone deposits, Cape Wanbrow, Otago, and Marfells Beach, Marlborough (Worthy 1998a, Worthy & Grant-Mackie 2003, Rawlence, Till *et al.* 2017).

The dimorphic *Leucocarbo* shags of Otago, Southland, and Stewart Island were considered a single species (Stewart Island shag *L. chalconotus*) until Rawlence *et al.* (2016) demonstrated that the Otago population was sister to the monomorphic Chatham Island shag (*L. onslowi*), meaning that either all three populations were conspecific, or that they should all be considered full species. We follow Rawlence *et al.* (2016) in separating the northern and southern populations of Stewart Island shag (*sensu* Checklist Committee 2010) as full species. The type specimen for *L. chalconotus* was from Otago (Gray 1845), and so this name is retained for the morphologically larger northern species, with Otago shag as the recommended English name.

► *Leucocarbo stewarti* (Ogilvie-Grant)

Foveaux Shag | Mapo

Phalacrocorax colensoi Buller (Mar.), 1888: *History of the Birds of N.Z.*, 2nd edition 2 (part 5): 161 – Bluff, Southland. Not
Phalacrocorax colensoi Buller, 1888 – Auckland Islands.
Phalacrocorax stewarti Ogilvie-Grant, 1898: *Cat. Birds Brit. Mus.* 26: 385 – Bluff, Southland.
Hypoleucus campbelli stewarti (Ogilvie-Grant); Mathews & Iredale 1913, *Ibis 1* (10th ser.): 413.
Phalacrocorax huttoni Buller; Oliver 1930, *N.Z. Birds*, 1st edition: 191. In part.
Phalacrocorax chalconotus (G.R. Gray); Oliver 1930, *N.Z. Birds*, 1st edition: 192. In part.
Phalacrocorax (Leucocarbo) carunculatus chalconotus (G.R. Gray); Checklist Committee 1953, *Checklist N.Z. Birds*: 29. In part.
Leucocarbo carunculatus chalconotus (G.R. Gray); Checklist Committee 1970, *Annot. Checklist Birds N.Z.*: 32. In part.
Leucocarbo chalconotus (G.R. Gray); Checklist Committee 1990, *Checklist Birds N.Z.*: 83. In part.
Phalacrocorax chalconotus (G.R. Gray); Marchant & Higgins 1990, *HANZAB 1*: 876. In part.

Foveaux Strait and Stewart Island / Rakiura; midden and Late Pleistocene or Holocene bone deposits from Stewart Island (Worthy 1998b).

See comments under *L. chalconotus* above. The type locality for *L. stewarti* was Bluff (Ogilvie-Grant 1898, p.386), not Stewart Island / Rakiura (*fide* Checklist Committee 2010; Rawlence *et al.* 2016). We follow Rawlence *et al.* (2016) in recommending that this smaller southern species be known as the Foveaux shag.

New vagrant species added after *Leucocarbo campbelli*:

Macquarie Island Shag

► *Leucocarbo purpurascens* (Brandt)

Added to the New Zealand list on the basis of two specimens collected at the Auckland Islands / Maukahuka in 1901 (Miskelly & Cooper 2020).

Order PELECANIFORMES: Pelicans, Herons, and Ibises

We follow the recommendations of Ericson *et al.* (2006), Hackett *et al.* (2008), Jarvis *et al.* (2014), Burleigh *et al.* (2015), Prum *et al.* (2015), and Kuhl *et al.* (2021) in moving Ardeidae (herons and bitterns) and Threskiornithidae (ibises and spoonbills) from Ciconiiformes into Pelecaniformes. The family sequence follows Clements *et al.* (2019) and Chesser *et al.* (2020): Pelecanidae, Ardeidae, Threskiornithidae.

Family ARDEIDAE Leach: Herons and Bitterns | Matuku

Subfamily ARDEINAE Leach: Herons and Egrets

Genus inserted before *Ardea*:

Genus **Bubulcus** Bonaparte

Bubulcus Bonaparte (ex Pucheran MS), 1855: *Compt. Rend. Séa. Acad. Sci., Paris* 40: 722 – Type species (by subsequent designation) *Bubulcus ibis* “Hasselquist” = *Bubulcus ibis* (Linnaeus).

We follow Checklist Committee (1990), Sheldon *et al.* (2000), and Dickinson & Remsen (2013) in placing cattle egret in genus *Bubulcus* (cf. *Ardea* in Checklist Committee 2010).

- ***Bubulcus ibis*** (Linnaeus) **Cattle Egret**

Ardea Ibis Linnaeus, 1758: *Syst. Nat., 10th edition* 1(1): 144 – Egypt.

- Bubulcus ibis coromandus*** (Boddaert) **Eastern Cattle Egret**

Cancroma Coromanda Boddaert, 1783: *Tables des Planches Enluminées d’Histoire Naturelle de M. d’Aubenton*: 54. Based on “Crabier de la côte de Coromandel” in Buffon 1765–81, *Hist. Nat. Oiseaux* 8: pl. 190 – Coromandel, India.

Bubulcus ibis coromandus (Boddaert); Checklist Committee 1970, *Annot. Checklist Birds N.Z.*: 35.

Genus **Ardea** Linnaeus

- ***Ardea alba*** Linnaeus **Great Egret**

Ardea alba Linnaeus, 1758: *Syst. Nat., 10th edition* 1(1): 144 – Sweden.

We follow Pratt (2011) and Dickinson & Remsen (2013) in recognising a single species of great egret, with four subspecies: *alba* (southern Palaearctic from central Europe to Russian Far East), *modesta* (eastern Asia south to Australasia), *melanorhyncha* Wagler, 1827 (sub-Saharan Africa and Madagascar), and *egretta* Gmelin, 1789 (North and South America).

Family THRESKIORNITHIDAE Poche: Ibises and Spoonbills

Subfamily THRESKIORNITHINAE Poche: Ibises

Genus **Threskiornis** G.R. Gray

- ***Threskiornis molucca*** (Cuvier) **White Ibis**

Moluccas to New Guinea, Solomon Islands, and Australia. Checklist Committee (2010) used *T. m. strictipennis* (Gould); however, we follow Lowe & Richards (1991) who sunk *T. m. strictipennis* under the nominate subspecies and recognised two subspecies only: *T. m. pygmaeus* Mayr, 1931 and *T. m. molucca*. In the original description, the species name *molucca* was used as a noun in apposition, and so it cannot be changed to *moluccus* (see Christidis & Boles 2008, p. 113).

- Threskiornis molucca molucca*** (Cuvier) **White Ibis**

Ibis molucca Cuvier, 1829: *Règne Anim.* (2nd edition) 1: 520 (note) – Moluccas, Indonesia.

Threskiornis molucca molucca (Cuvier); Christidis & Boles 2008, *Syst. Taxon. Australian Birds*: 113.

New vagrant species added after *Threskiornis molucca*:

- ***Threskiornis spinicollis*** (Jameson) **Straw-necked Ibis**

Ibis spinicollis Jameson, 1835: *Edinburgh New Philosophical Journal* 19: 213 – Murray River, New South Wales, Australia.

Ibis lamellicollis Lafresnaye, 1836: *Mag. Zool., Paris* (sér. 1): pl. 57 – New South Wales, Australia.

Ibis australis Jardine & Selby, 1837: *Illust. Ornith.* (new series) 4: text, pl. 17 – New South Wales, Australia.

Carphibis spinicollis fitzroi [sic] Mathews, 1912: *Novit. Zool.* 18(3): 228 – Fitzroy River, north-west, Australia.

Threskiornis spinicollis (Jameson); Lindsay 1963, *Notornis* 10: 304.

Throughout Australia and New Guinea (Marchant & Higgins 1990). Vagrant to Tasmania, Lord Howe Island, and Norfolk Island (two records; Lindsay 1963; M. Hoare in Wakelin 1968). One near Tarras, Central Otago, in Feb. 2010, was the first record of this species from New Zealand (Miskelly *et al.* 2011).

Order CICONIIFORMES: Storks [formerly included Herons and Ibises]

We follow the recommendations of Ericson *et al.* (2006), Hackett *et al.* (2008), Jarvis *et al.* (2014), Burleigh *et al.* (2015), Prum *et al.* (2015), and Kuhl *et al.* (2021) in moving Ardeidae (herons and bitterns) and Threskiornithidae (ibises and spoonbills) from Ciconiiformes into Pelecaniformes. As no other members of the order have been recorded from New Zealand, Ciconiiformes has been removed from the New Zealand list.

Order ACCIPITRIFORMES: Kites, Hawks, and Eagles

The common name adopted for the order replaces “Secretary-bird, Kites, Eagles, Hawks and Allies” used by Checklist Committee (2010).

Family ACCIPITRIDAE Vigors: Kites, Hawks, and Eagles

The common name adopted for the family replaces “Kites, Eagles, Hawks and Allies” used by Checklist Committee (2010).

Subfamily ACCIPITRINAE: Kites, Hawks, and Eagles

The common name adopted for the subfamily replaces “Kites, Eagles, Hawks and Allies” used by Checklist Committee (2010).

Order STRIGIFORMES: Owls

Family STRIGIDAE Leach: Typical Owls

Subfamily BUBONINAE Vigors: Hawk-owls

The common name adopted for the subfamily replaces “Hawk-owls and Allies” used by Checklist Committee (2010).

Genus *Ninox* Hodgson

Synonym added: *Sceloglaux* Kaup, 1848: *Isis von Oken*, Heft 41: col. 768 – Type species (by monotypy) *Athene albifacies* G.R. Gray, 1844 = *Ninox albifacies* (G.R. Gray).

Sceloglaux Kaup, 1848, was formerly considered to be a monotypic genus endemic to New Zealand (Checklist Committee 2010). However, genetic research by Wood, Mitchell *et al.* (2017) provides strong evidence to support the inferences of previous authors who argued for a close relationship between *Sceloglaux* and species of *Ninox* (e.g. Olsen 1999; Weick 2006). *Sceloglaux* is now accepted as a junior synonym of *Ninox*.

► †***Ninox albifacies*** (G.R. Gray) Laughing Owl | Whēkau

†***Ninox albifacies rufifacies*** (Buller) North Island Laughing Owl
Synonym added: *Ninox albifacies rufifacies* (Buller); Hume 2017, *Extinct Birds*: 233.

†***Ninox albifacies albifacies*** (G.R. Gray) South Island Laughing Owl
Synonyms added:

Athenae albifacies G.R. Gray; Anon. 1870, *Cat. Colonial Mus.*: 72. Unjustified emendation.

Ninox albifacies (G.R. Gray); Wood *et al.* 2017, *Zool. J. Linn. Soc.* 179: 912.

Ninox albifacies albifacies (G.R. Gray); Hume 2017, *Extinct Birds* (2nd edition): 231.

Order CORACIIFORMES: Kingfishers, Bee-eaters, and Rollers

The common name adopted for the order replaces “Kingfishers, Bee-eaters, Rollers and Allies” used by Checklist Committee (2010).

Suborder CORACII: Rollers

The common name adopted for the suborder replaces “Rollers and Allies” used by Checklist Committee (2010).

Suborder ALCEDINES: Kingfishers, Todies, and Motmots

Family ALCEDINIDAE Rafinesque: Kingfishers

Alcedia Rafinesque, 1815: *Analyse de la Nature*: 66 – Type genus *Alcedo* Linnaeus, 1758.

We follow Moyle (2006) and Cracraft (2013) in recognising a single family of kingfishers, with three subfamilies (one of which occurs in New Zealand).

Subfamily HALCYONINAE Vigors: Forest Kingfishers

Halcyonidae Vigors, 1825: *Trans. Linn. Soc. London* 14(3): 428 – Type genus *Halcyon* Swainson, 1821.

Order FALCONIFORMES: Falcons

The common name adopted for the order replaces “Falcon and Allies” used by Checklist Committee (2010).

Family FALCONIDAE Leach: Falcons

Genus *Falco* Linnaeus

► *Falco subniger* G.R. Gray

Black Falcon

The sole record of this species in New Zealand (Gisborne, Nov. 1983) is no longer considered acceptable (Miskelly *et al.* 2015), therefore it is removed from the New Zealand list.

► *Falco novaeseelandiae* Gmelin

New Zealand Falcon | Kārearea

Text added: Trewick & Olley (2016) proposed recognising North Island and South Island subspecies of the New Zealand falcon based primarily on a size difference between islands. However, this conclusion was not supported by their genetic study, which did not include the holotype of *Falco novaeseelandiae* Gmelin, and did not adequately test the proposal of Fox to recognise three forms, one of which occurs in both the North Island and South Island (Marchant & Higgins 1993). Therefore the Checklist Committee continues to recognise no subspecies and awaits a more comprehensive study.

Order PSITTACIFORMES: Cockatoos, Parrots, and Parakeets

Text replaced with: Joseph *et al.* (2012) synthesised molecular, palaeontological, and morphological evidence to produce a consensus classification, with formalised nomenclature, that included three superfamilies of parrots: Strigopoidea (kākāpō, kākā, and kea), Cacatuoidea (cockatoos) and Psittacoidea (parrots), and six parrot families: Strigopidae, Nestoridae, Cacatuidae, Psittacidae, Psittrichasidae, and Psittaculidae. This system was amended by Cracraft (2013), who recognised four families (Strigopidae, Cacatuidae, Psittacidae, and Psittaculidae) and ten subfamilies of parrots. This included treating Strigopinae (kākāpō) and Nestorinae (kākā and kea) as subfamilies of Strigopidae (see also Wright *et al.* 2008, who demonstrated that the split between *Strigops* and *Nestor* was too recent for these genera to be placed in separate families). This is consistent with the classification used in the 2010 New Zealand checklist. Joseph *et al.* (2012) and Cracraft (2013) placed the parakeet genera *Cyanoramphus* and *Platycercus* in family Psittaculidae, with Cracraft recommending their placement in subfamily Loriinae. These genera were placed in Psittacidae in the 2010 checklist. Cracraft’s (2013) modification of Joseph *et al.*’s (2012) classification system has been followed by most global bird checklists, including Dickinson & Remsen (2013), Clements *et al.* (2019), and F. Gill *et al.* (2021), and is adopted here.

Family: STRIGOPIDAE Bonaparte: Kākāpō, and Kākā and Kea

Subfamily STRIGOPINAE Bonaparte: Kākāpō

Strigopidae Bonaparte, 1849: *Consp. Syst. Ornith.*: 1 – Type genus *Strigops* G.R. Gray, 1845.

Checklist Committee (2010) attributed Strigopinae to Gray (1848) in error. The correct author of Strigopidae and Strigopinae is Bonaparte (1849), as recognised by Worthy *et al.* (2011b) and Joseph *et al.* (2012).

Genus *Strigops* G.R. Gray

► *Strigops habroptila* G.R. Gray

Kākāpō | Kakapo

Strigops habroptilus G.R. Gray, 1845: *Gen. Birds* 2: 427 – Dusky Sound, Fiordland.

Strigops habroptila G.R. Gray; Dickinson 2003, *Complete Checklist Birds World*: 181. Emendation.

Genus *Strigops* was determined to be feminine by ICZN (1955: 262), hence the amended spelling of the original species name.

Subfamily NESTORINAE Bonaparte: Kākā and Kea

Genus **Nestor** Lesson

► ***Nestor meridionalis*** (Gmelin)

Kākā | Kaka

Text replaced with: We retain the North Island and South Island kaka subspecies, contrary to the recommendations in Sainsbury *et al.* (2006) and Dussex *et al.* (2015), on the basis that they did not adequately explore the described published morphological differences for these taxa, and that the haplotype patterns in the mitochondrial data are not sufficient to evaluate evolutionary history. We consider that further research is required to better understand the relationships.

New (extinct) species inserted after *Nestor meridionalis*:

► †***Nestor chathamensis*** Wood, Mitchell, Scofield & Tennyson

Chatham Island Kaka

Nestor notabilis Gould; Forbes 1892, *Trans. N.Z. Inst.* 24: 189. In part.
Nestor meridionalis (Gmelin); Forbes, 1893: *Ibis* 5 (6th ser.): 544. In part.
Nestor meridionalis (Gmelin); Dawson 1959, *Notornis* 8: 114. In part.
Nestor?n. sp. Tennyson & Millener 1994: *Notornis* 41 (supp.): 165.
Kaka (?sp.n.) Tennyson & Millener 1994: *Notornis* 41 (supp.): 172.
Nestor spp. Millener 1999: *Smithsonian Contrib. Paleobiology* 89: 97.
Nestor “Chatham Islands” Holdaway *et al.* 2001: *N.Z. Journ. Zool.* 28: 135.

Nestor chathamensis Wood, Mitchell, Scofield & Tennyson, 2014: *Zool. Journ. Linn. Soc.* 172: 191 – Chatham Island.

Known only from Holocene fossil remains on the Chatham Islands (Wood *et al.* 2014).

Family *CACATUIDAE G.R. Gray: Cockatoos

The common name adopted for the family replaces “Cockatoos and Allies” used by Checklist Committee (2010).

Authority amended to:

Cacatuidae G.R. Gray, 1840: *List Gen. Birds* (1st edition): 53 – Type genus *Cacatua* Vieillot, 1817.

Genus ***Eolophus** Bonaparte

► ****Eolophus roseicapilla*** (Vieillot)

Galah

Cacatua roseicapilla Vieillot, 1817: *Nouv. Dict. Hist. Nat., nouv. éd.* 17: 12 – region of Shark Bay, Western Australia.
Eolophus roseicapillus (Vieillot); Higgins 1999, *HANZAB* 4: 105.
Eolophus roseicapilla (Vieillot); David & Gosselin 2002, *Bull. Brit. Ornith. Club* 122: 39.

Text added: Although the genus *Eolophus* is masculine, we follow David & Gosselin (2002a) and Dickinson & Remsen (2013) in changing the species epithet to “*roseicapilla*”, which should be treated as a noun in apposition, with the original spelling to be retained (ICZN 1999, Art. 31.2.1, 32.3, 34.2.1).

Family Psittacidae replaced with Psittaculidae:

Family PSITTACULIDAE Vigors: Old World Parrots

Psittacula Vigors, 1825: *Zoological Journal* 2: 400 – Type genus *Psittacula* Cuvier, 1800.

Family Platycercinae replaced with Loriinae:

Subfamily LORIINAE Selby: Lories, Rosellas, and Broad-tailed Parrots

Loriinae Selby, 1836: *Naturalist's Library, Ornith.* 6: 57, 141 – Type genus *Lorius* Vigors, 1825.

Genus ***Platycercus** Vigors

► ****Platycercus elegans*** (Gmelin)

Crimson Rosella

The last feral population of crimson rosella known in New Zealand (in Wellington city) died out soon after 1993 (the last reported sightings were in Parrish & Lock 1995). This species has been moved to Appendix 2 (Failed Introductions).

Order PASSERIFORMES: Passerine (Perching) Birds

Suborder ACANTHISITTI: New Zealand Wrens

Family ACANTHISITTIDAE Sundevall: New Zealand Wrens

Genus **Xenicus** G.R. Gray

Synonym added: *Pachyptilas* Millener, 1988: *Journ. Royal Soc. N.Z.* 18(4): 387 – Type species (by original designation) *Pachyptilas yaldwyni* Millener.

Text added: A molecular review of the relationships of New Zealand wrens has shown that stout-legged wrens (*Pachyptilas* sp.) are more closely related to the rock wren (*Xenicus gilviventris*) than either is to the bush wren (*X. longipes*). Therefore *Pachyptilas* Millener, 1988 should be synonymised with *Xenicus*, so that *Pachyptilas jagmi* and *Pachyptilas yaldwyni* become *Xenicus jagmi* and *Xenicus yaldwyni* respectively (Mitchell *et al.* 2016).

► †*Xenicus jagmi* (Millener)

North Island Stout-legged Wren

Synonym added: *Xenicus jagmi* (Millener); Mitchell *et al.* 2016, *Mol. Phyl. Evol.* 102: 302.

► †*Xenicus yaldwyni* (Millener)

South Island Stout-legged Wren

Synonym added: *Xenicus yaldwyni* (Millener); Mitchell *et al.* 2016, *Mol. Phyl. Evol.* 102: 302.

Suborder PASSERES (or POLYMYODI): Oscines (Songbirds)

The arrangement of New Zealand songbirds in the 2022 Checklist is based largely on the sequences presented by Dickinson & Christidis (2014), Clements *et al.* (2019), Handbook of the Birds of the World and BirdLife International (2020), Fjeldså *et al.* (2020), and F. Gill *et al.* (2021).

“CORVIDA”: Australasian Songbirds

Family MELIPHAGIDAE Swainson: Honeyeaters

Genus **Anthochaera** Vigors & Horsfield

First two lines replaced with: *Creadion* Vieillot, 1816: *Analyse Nouv. Ornith. Elem.*: 34 – Type species (by subsequent designation) *Corvus paradoxus* Latham [sic] = *Anthochaera paradoxa* (Daudin). Suppressed and invalid (*fide* ICZN 2011, Opinion 2284. *Bull. Zool. Nomenclature* 68(3): 234).

► *Anthochaera carunculata* (Shaw)

Red Wattlebird

Last three lines replaced with: We have retained the red wattlebird in *Anthochaera* (cf. *Creadion*) based on the recommendations in ICZN 2011, Opinion 2284.

Family ACANTHIZIDAE Bonaparte: Australasian Warblers

The common name adopted for the family replaces “Scrubwrens, Thornbills and Allies” used by Checklist Committee (2010).

Family CALLAEIDAE Sundevall: New Zealand Wattlebirds

Genus **Callaeas** J.R. Forster

► †*Callaeas cinereus* (Gmelin)

South Island Kokako | Kōkā

Text added: We follow David & Gosselin (2002b) and Dickinson & Christidis (2014) in regarding *Callaeas* as masculine, hence the species name should be *Callaeas cinereus* (*contra* Checklist Committee 2010).

Family NOTIOMYSTIDAE Driskell, Christidis, Gill, Boles, Barker & Longmore: Hihi

The common name adopted for the family replaces “Stitchbird” used by Checklist Committee (2010).

New family inserted after family Notiomystidae:

Family MOHOUIDAE Mathews: New Zealand Creepers

Checklist Committee (2010) placed the three species in the genus *Mohoua* Lesson, 1837, in the subfamily Mohouinae Mathews, 1946, as a subfamily of Pachycephalidae. Several more recent genetic studies have found *Mohoua* to be basal in core Corvoidea (e.g. Aggerbeck *et al.* 2013; Aidala *et al.* 2013; Gibb *et al.* 2015), therefore placing them outside Pachycephalidae. We follow the recommendation of Aidala *et al.* (2013) who confirmed, using both nuclear and mitochondrial sequence data, the monophyly of the genus, and recommended its placement in the endemic family Mohouidae. Use of Mohouidae was followed by Dickinson & Christidis (2014: 174), who we follow in placing Mohouidae immediately after Notiomystidae (which follows Callaeidae). The common name used for the subfamily Mohouinae by Checklist Committee (2010) was “Whitehead and Allies” but we recommend using “New Zealand creepers”, recognising that one of the three species is the brown creeper (*Mohoua novaeseelandiae*).

Family PACHYCEPHALIDAE Swainson: Whistlers and Shrike-thrushes

With recognition of the endemic family Mohouidae, and the exclusion of Norfolk Island from the geographical coverage of the checklist, the family Pachycephalidae is no longer recognised as being represented in New Zealand.

Family Oriolidae inserted after family Mohouidae:

Family ORIOLIDAE Vigors: Old World Orioles, Pitohuis, Figbirds, and Piopio

Oriolina Vigors, 1825: *Zoological Journal* 2(7): 395 – Type genus *Oriolus* Linnaeus, 1766.

Checklist Committee (2010) followed the conclusions of Christidis, Leeton *et al.* (1996) who found that piopio were basal to the bowerbirds. However, more recent research has shown that Christidis, Leeton *et al.* (1996) possibly had a misidentified DNA sample, and that piopio should actually be placed in Oriolidae (Johansson *et al.* 2011; Zuccon & Ericson 2012; Gibb *et al.* 2015). Therefore the family Oriolidae is added to the New Zealand Checklist, and the family Turnagridae Buller, 1888, becomes a junior synonym of Oriolidae. We follow Dickinson & Christidis (2014) in placing *Turnagra* in the endemic subfamily Turnagrinae.

Subfamily †TURNAGRINAЕ Buller: Piopio

Turnagridae Buller, 1888: *History of the Birds of N.Z.*, 2nd edition 1: 30 – Type genus *Turnagra* Lesson, 1837.

Family ARTAMIDAE Blyth: Butcherbirds, Currawongs, and Woodswallows

Text replaced with: Checklist Committee (2010) adopted recommendations by Australian authorities to unite woodswallows, magpies, butcherbirds, and currawongs in the family Artamidae, therefore synonymising Cracticidae within Artamidae. Kearns *et al.* (2013) found Artamidae (*sensu* Schodde & Mason 1999 and Christidis & Boles 2008) to be paraphyletic; however, they recommended further work using increased locus and taxon-sampling within the context of a rigorous multilocus coalescent species tree approach before considering raising Cracticinae to family-level.

New subfamily added:

Subfamily ARTAMINAE Blyth: Woodswallows

Artamidae Blyth, 1849: *Cat. Birds Mus. Asiatic Soc.*: 199 – Type genus *Artamus* Vieillot, 1816.

Genus *Artamus* Vieillot

New vagrant species added after *Artamus superciliosus*:

➤ *Artamus cyanopterus* (Latham)

Dusky Woodswallow

Loxia cyanoptera Latham, 1802: *Index Ornith. Suppl.*: xlvi – “New Holland” = Sydney, New South Wales, Australia (*fide* Mayr & Greenway 1962, *in* Peters *Check-list Birds World* 15: 165).

Turdus sordidus Latham, 1802: *Index Ornith. Suppl.*: xliii. *Not Turdus sordidus* Status Müller, 1776.

Artamus lineatus Vieillot, 1817: *Nouv. Dict. Hist. Nat., nouv. éd.* 17: 297 – “Nouvelle-Hollande” = Australia.

Ocypterus albo-vittatus Valenciennes, 1820: *Mém. Mus. Nat. d'Hist. Natur., Paris* 6: 23, pl. 8 – Timor.

Artamus albovittatus (Valenciennes); Vigors & Horsfield 1826: *Trans. Linn. Soc. London* 15: 210.

Leptopteryx albovittata (Valenciennes); Wagler 1827: *Syst. Avium*: sp. 5.

Artamus sordidus (Latham); Sharpe 1890, *Cat. Birds Brit. Mus.* 13: 19.

Artamus cyanopterus cyanopterus (Latham); Schodde & Mason 1999, *Directory Australian Birds. Passerines*: 568.

Artamus cyanopterus (Latham); Christidis & Boles 2008: *Syst. Taxon. Australian Birds*: 35, 196.

Southern and eastern Australia (Higgins *et al.* 2006). The sole record of this species in New Zealand was a bird seen at Oban, Stewart Island, in Sep. 2014 (Kakishima & Morimoto 2015; Miskelly *et al.* 2015).

New subfamily added:

Subfamily CRACTICINAE Chenu & des Murs: Butcherbirds, Currawongs, and Bell Magpies

Cracticinés Chenu & des Murs, 1853: *Encycl. d'Hist. Nat., Oiseaux* 5: 77 – Type genus *Cracticus* Vieillot, 1816.

We follow Checklist Committee (2010) and Cake *et al.* (2018) in using genus *Gymnorhina* for Australian magpie (cf. *Cracticus*, as recommended by Christidis & Boles 2008 and Kearns *et al.* 2013). This approach (Australian magpie in genus *Gymnorhina*, in family Artamidae) has also been followed by Dickinson & Christidis (2014), Clements *et al.* (2019), Handbook of the Birds of the World and BirdLife International (2020), and F. Gill *et al.* (2021).

Family MONARCHIDAE Bonaparte: Monarch Flycatchers

New vagrant genus and species added after *Monarcha melanopsis*:

Genus *Grallina* Vieillot

Tanypus Oppel, 1812: *Denkschrift Königl. Baier. Akad. Wissen. München*: 164. Type species (by monotypy) *Tanypus australis* Oppel. Not *Tanypus* Meigen, 1803.

Grallina Vieillot, 1816: *Analyse Nouv. Ornith. Elem.*: 42. – Type species (by monotypy) *Grallina melanoleuca* Vieillot = *Grallina cyanoleuca* (Latham).

► *Grallina cyanoleuca* (Latham) Magpie-lark

Gracula picata Latham, 1802: *Index Ornith. Suppl.*: xxix. “New Holland” = Australia. Suppressed and invalid (*fide* ICZN 2009, Opinion 2240, *Bull. Zool. Nomenclature* 66(4): 375).

Corvus cyanoleucus Latham, 1802: *Index Ornith. Suppl.*: xxv – Sydney, New South Wales, Australia. Name placed in the *Official List of Specific Names in Zoology* (*fide* ICZN 2009, Opinion 2240, *Bull. Zool. Nomenclature* 66(4): 375).

Tanypus australis Oppel, 1812: *Denkschrift Königl. Baier. Akad. Wissen. München*: 164 – Australia.

Grallina melanoleuca Vieillot, 1816: *Analyse Nouv. Ornith. Elem.*: 68 – “Nouvelle-Hollande” = Australia.

Merops picatus Shaw, 1812: *Gen. Zool., Syst. Natur. Hist. Aves* 8: 165 – “New Holland” = Australia.

Grallina cyanoleuca cyanoleuca (Latham); Schodde & Mason 1999, *Directory Australian Birds. Passerines*: 507.

Grallina cyanoleuca (Latham); Christidis & Boles 2008: *Syst. Taxon. Australian Birds*: 36, 200.

Throughout mainland Australia other than the arid interior; also Lord Howe Island (introduced) and Timor. Two subspecies recognised: *G. c. neglecta* Mathews, 1912 in northern Australia and Timor, and *G. c. cyanoleuca* throughout the remainder of Australia plus Lord Howe Island (Higgins *et al.* 2006). The sole record of this species in New Zealand (other than failed introductions c.1900; Appendix 2) was a bird seen at Gorge River, South Westland, in Apr. 2008 (Miskelly *et al.* 2017).

Family CORVIDAE Leach: Crows and Jays

Genus *Corvus* Linnaeus

Text replaced with: Based on genetic results and a lack of osteological differences, Scofield *et al.* (2017) did not support the separation of the extinct New Zealand taxa at species level, and recommended that *Corvus antipodum* (Forbes, 1893) be considered a subspecies of *Corvus moriorum* Forbes, 1892. They also recommended that *Corvus antipodum pycrafti* Gill, 2003 be considered a junior synonym of *Corvus antipodum* (Forbes, 1893). However, the North Island subspecies *Corvus antipodum antipodum* was not analysed as part of the study and therefore the validity of the two mainland subspecies has not been re-examined. In B. Gill’s (2003) original description of the South Island raven *Corvus antipodum pycrafti*, he discussed Bergmann’s Rule with regards to larger birds being in the South Island but pointed out that several other bird sister taxa are separated at Cook Strait. Therefore, we have taken a conservative approach by still recognising both mainland subspecies.

► †*Corvus moriorum* Forbes New Zealand Raven

Extinct. Widespread in coastal Holocene fossil deposits, especially sand-dunes, in the North Island, South Island, Stewart Island, and the Chatham Islands (B. Gill 2003, Scofield *et al.* 2017). Also present at a few Pleistocene sites in the South Island. Widely represented in midden deposits at coastal archaeological sites.

†*Corvus moriorum antipodum* (Forbes) North Island Raven

Synonym added: *Corvus moriorum antipodum* (Forbes); Scofield *et al.* 2017, *Mol. Phyl. Evol.* 106: 142.

†*Corvus moriorum pycrafti* Gill**South Island Raven**

Synonym added: *Corvus moriorum pycrafti* Gill; REPAD: The Recently Extinct Plants and Animals Database (accessed Jul. 2021).

†*Corvus moriorum moriorum* Forbes**Chatham Island Raven**

Synonym added: *Corvus moriorum moriorum* Forbes; Scofield *et al.* 2017, *Mol. Phyl. Evol.* 106: 142.

“PASSE RIDA”: Eurasian and New World Songbirds**Family PETROICIDAE Mathews: Australasian Robins****Genus *Petroica* Swainson**

Petroica Swainson, 1830: *Zool. Illustr.* (ser. 2) 80: pl. 36 & text – Type species (by monotypy) *Muscicapa multicolor* Gmelin = *Petroica multicolor* (Gmelin).

Miro Lesson, 1831: *Traité d’Ornith.* 5(1): 389 – Type species (by monotypy) *Muscicapa longipes* Garnot = *Petroica longipes* (Garnot).

Myiomoira Reichenbach, 1850: *Avium Syst. Nat.*: pl. 67 – Type species (by monotypy) *Muscicapa toitoi* Lesson = *Petroica macrocephala toitoi* (Lesson).

Myioscopus Reichenbach, 1850: *Avium Syst. Nat.*: pl. 67 – Type species (by monotypy) *Muscicapa longipes* Garnot = *Petroica longipes* (Garnot).

Nesomiro Mathews & Iredale, 1913: *Ibis* 1 (10th ser.): 440 – Type species (by original designation) *Miro traversi* Buller = *Petroica traversi* (Buller).

Text added: Several studies using both nuclear and mitochondrial DNA revealed New Zealand robins (which were formerly placed in the subgenus *Miro*) to be embedded with the Australo-Pacific genus *Petroica* (Miller & Lambert 2006; Kearns, Joseph *et al.* 2019; Kearns, Malloy *et al.* 2019). These same studies also showed black robin (*P. traversi*) – which was formerly included in subgenus *Miro* – to be more closely related to tomtits (*P. macrocephala*) than it is to North Island robin (*P. longipes*) and South Island robin (*P. australis*). We therefore no longer recognise subgenera within the genus *Petroica*, and move black robin to follow tomtit in the species sequence.

Kearns, Malloy *et al.* (2019) showed that all New Zealand taxa were in a monophyletic clade that is basal to the Australo-Pacific radiation, and that these lineages have been separated for c. 7 million years. *Miro* is available as a genus name for all New Zealand taxa (i.e. both robins and tomtits). We have chosen to leave all species in *Petroica* pending further analyses.

Family Megaluridae replaced with family Locustellidae:

Family LOCUSTELLIDAE Bonaparte: Grassbirds

Locustelleae Bonaparte, 1854: *Ann. Sci. Nat., Zool. Paris*, 4th Series 1: 118 – Type genus *Locustella* Kaup, 1829.

Megaluridae Blyth, 1875: *Journ. Asiatic Soc. Bengal* (n. ser.) 43(2) (extra number): 117 – Type genus *Megalurus* Horsfield, 1821.

We follow Bock (1944), Alström *et al.* (2011), and Dickinson & Christidis (2014) in giving Locustellidae Bonaparte, 1854 priority over Megaluridae Blyth, 1875. The common name adopted for the family replaces “Grassbirds and Allies” used by Checklist Committee (2010).

Genus *Bowdleria* replaced with Genus *Poodytes*:

Genus *Poodytes* Cabanis

Poodytes Cabanis, 1850–1851: *Mus. Heineanum* 1: 42 – Type species (by original monotypy) *Sphaenoaecus gramineus* Gould = *Poodytes gramineus* (Gould).

Bowdleria Rothschild, 1896: *Novit. Zool.* 3: 539 – Type species (by subsequent designation) *Synallaxis punctata* Quoy & Gaimard = *Poodytes punctatus* (Quoy & Gaimard).

Eremiornis North, 1900: *Vict. Nat.* 17: 79 – Type species (by original monotypy) *Eremiornis carteri* North = *Poodytes carteri* (North).

We follow Dickinson & Christidis (2014) and Alström *et al.* (2018) in synonymising *Bowdleria* and *Eremiornis* with *Poodytes*. Cabanis (1850–51) did not provide an etymology for *Poodytes*, but it is likely based on Greek ‘po’= grass, and ‘dyt’= a burrower or diver.

➤ *Poodytes punctatus* (Quoy & Gaimard)**Fernbird | Mātātā**

New Zealand. Originally widespread in swamp, fernland, and low scrub on North Island, South Island, Stewart Island / Rakiura and a few offshore islands; less abundant now (Higgins *et al.* 2006). Five subspecies recognised.

Poodytes punctatus vealeae* (Kemp)*North Island Fernbird | Koroātito**

Synonyms added:

Megalurus punctatus vealeae (Kemp); Dickinson 2003, *Complete Checklist Birds World*: 577.

Poodytes punctatus vealeae (Kemp); Dickinson & Christidis 2014, *Complete Checklist Birds World* 2: 468.

Poodytes punctatus punctatus* (Quoy & Gaimard)*South Island Fernbird | Mātātā**

Synonym added: *Poodytes punctatus punctatus* (Quoy & Gaimard); Dickinson & Christidis 2014, *Complete Checklist Birds World*, 2: 468.

Poodytes punctatus stewartianus* (Oliver)*Stewart Island Fernbird | Mātā**

Synonyms added:

Megalurus punctatus stewartianus (Oliver); Dickinson 2003, *Complete Checklist Birds World*: 577.

Poodytes punctatus stewartianus (Oliver); Dickinson & Christidis 2014, *Complete Checklist Birds World* 2: 468.

The type locality for both *Bowdleria punctata stewartiana* Oliver and *Bowdleria punctata insularis* Stead is Kundy Island (Miskelly 2012). The type population(s) died out after 1956, following the introduction of weka *Gallirallus australis*; the fernbirds now on Kundy Island were reintroduced from nearby Big Island in 1995 (Miskelly 2012).

Poodytes punctatus wilsoni* (Stead)*Codfish Island Fernbird | Mātā**

Synonyms added:

Megalurus punctatus wilsoni (Stead); Dickinson 2003, *Complete Checklist Birds World*: 577.

Poodytes punctatus wilsoni (Stead); Dickinson & Christidis 2014, *Complete Checklist Birds World* 2: 468.

Poodytes punctatus caudatus* (Buller)*Snares Island Fernbird | Mātā**

Synonyms added:

Megalurus punctatus caudatus (Buller); Dickinson 2003, *Complete Checklist Birds World*: 577.

Poodytes punctatus caudatus (Buller); Dickinson & Christidis 2014, *Complete Checklist Birds World* 2: 468.

Poodytes caudatus (Buller); del Hoyo & Collar 2016, *Illustrated Checklist Birds World* 2: 444.

Contra Holdaway *et al.* (2001) and del Hoyo & Collar (2016), we retain *caudatus* as a subspecies of *Poodytes punctatus* pending genetic comparisons with fernbird populations on and around Rakiura / Stewart Island.

► †*Poodytes rufescens* (Buller)**Chatham Island Fernbird**

Synonyms added:

Megalurus punctatus rufescens (Buller); Dickinson 2003, *Complete Checklist Birds World*: 577.

Poodytes punctatus rufescens (Buller); Dickinson & Christidis 2014, *Complete Checklist Birds World* 2: 468.

Poodytes rufescens (Buller); del Hoyo & Collar 2016, *Illustrated Checklist Birds World* 2: 444.

Text added: Estimated to have split from *P. punctatus* c. 2.6 million years ago (Alström *et al.* 2018).

Family *TURDIDAE Rafinesque: Thrushes

The common name adopted for the family replaces “Thrushes and Allies” used by Checklist Committee (2010).

Family *FRINGILLIDAE Leach: Finches, Euphonias, and Hawai’ian Honeycreepers**Subfamily *CARDUELINAE Vigors: Cardueline Finches**

Zuccon *et al.*’s (2012) comprehensive phylogenetic study of 93 finch species using nuclear and mitochondrial sequences revealed the genus *Carduelis* to be paraphyletic. We follow Zuccon *et al.* (2012) and Dickinson & Christidis (2014) in using genus *Chloris* for European greenfinch (*Chloris chloris*), and genus *Acanthis* for common redpoll (*Acanthis flammea*). European goldfinch (*Carduelis carduelis*) remains unchanged.

Family *EMBERIZIDAE Brehm: Buntings and New World Sparrows

The common name adopted for the family replaces “Buntings, Cardinals, Tanagers and Allies” used by Checklist Committee (2010).

Taxa with minor changes to their texts

In addition to the species entries above, the following 166 taxa in the main checklist have synonymy data that differ from the 2010 Checklist:

DINORNITHIFORMES: EMEIDAE: *Anomalopteryx, Pachyornis elephantopus, P. australis.*

APTERYGIFORMES: APTERYGIDAE: *Apteryx mantelli, A. rowi, A. owenii.*

ANSERIFORMES: ANATIDAE: *Cereopsis novaehollandiae, Malacorhynchus membranaceus, Biziura delautouri, Chenonetta jubata, Hymenolaimus malacorhynchos, Anas, A. gracilis, A. aucklandica, Aythya novaeseelandiae.*

GALLIFORMES: NUMIDIDAE: *Numida.* **ODONTOPHORIDAE:** *Callipepla californica brunnescens.*

PHASIANIDAE: *Coturnix novaeseelandiae, Synoicus ypsilophorus australis, Phasianus colchicus.*

PODICIPEDIFORMES: PODICIPEDIDAE: *Podiceps cristatus australis.*

COLUMBIFORMES: COLUMBIDAE: *Hemiphaga novaeseelandiae.*

CUCULIFORMES: CUCULIDAE: *Cuculus, Cacomantis, C. flabelliformis flabelliformis, Chrysococcyx, C. lucidus, Eudynamys taitensis.*

APODIFORMES: APODIDAE: *Hirundapus caudacutus caudacutus, Apus, A. pacificus pacificus.*

GRUIIFORMES: APTORNITHIDAE: *Aptornis defossor.* **RALLIDAE:** *RALLINAE, Crex crex, Lewinia muelleri, Gallirallus philippensis, G. a. assimilis, G. dieffenbachii, G. australis greyi, G. a. australis, Cabalus modestus, Zapornia pusilla affinis.*

CHARADRIIFORMES: HAEMATOPODIDAE: *Haematopus finschi.* **RECURVIROSTRIDAE:** *Himantopus novaeseelandiae.* **CHARADRIIDAE:** *Charadrius, C. bicinctus exilis, Anarhynchus, A. frontalis, Thinornis novaeseelandiae, Vanellus miles novaehollandiae.* **SCOLOPACIDAE:** *Numenius madagascariensis, N. phaeopus variegatus, ARENARIINAE, Arenaria interpres, Calidris canutus rogersi, C. ferruginea, C. mauri, Limnodromus, L. semipalmatus, Coenocorypha barrierensis, C. aucklandica aucklandica, Gallinago hardwickii, Phalaropus fulicarius, Tringa incana.* **STERCORARIIDAE:** *Stercorarius antarcticus lonnbergi, S. parasiticus, S. longicaudus.* **LARIDAE:** *Larus dominicanus, Onychoprion fuscatus, Sternula nereis daviseae, Hydroprogne caspia, Chlidonias leucopterus, C. albostriatus, Sterna vittata bethunei, S. paradisea.*

SPHENISCIFORMES: SPHENISCIDAE: *Aptenodytes, A. patagonicus, Pygoscelis adeliae, P. antarcticus, Eudyptes, E. chrysocome, E. filholi, E. pachyrhynchus, E. robustus, Eudyptula minor minor.*

PROCELLARIIFORMES: DIOMEDEIDAE: *Diomedea, D. exulans, D. sanfordi, Thalassarche chlororhynchos, T. carteri, T. cauta steadi, Phoebetria palpebrata.* **OCEANITIDAE:** *Fregetta grallaria, F. g. grallaria.* **PROCELLARIIDAE:** *Fulmarus glacialisoides, Daption capense, Pterodroma gouldi, Pt. alba, Pt. mollis, Pt. pycrofti, Halobaena caerulea, Pachyptila vittata, P. turtur, Procellaria parkinsoni, Ardenna pacifica pacifica, A. p. chlororhyncha, A. grisea, Puffinus gavia, P. huttoni, Pelecanoides, P. urinatrix urinatrix.*

SULIFORMES: FREGATIDAE: *Fregata minor palmerstoni.* **SULIDAE:** *Sula leucogaster plotus.*

PHALACROCORACIDAE: *Phalacrocorax carbo novaehollandiae, P. sulcirostris, Leucarbo campbelli.*

PELECANIFORMES: ARDEIDAE: *Bubulcus ibis coromandus, Ardea pacifica, A. alba modesta, Egretta novaehollandiae novaehollandiae, Nycticorax caledonicus australasiae, Ixobrychus novaeseelandiae.*

THRESKIORNITHIDAE: *Platalea.*

ACCIPITRIFORMES: ACCIPITRIDAE: *Circus approximans, Haliaeetus leucogaster, Aquila moorei.*

STRIGIFORMES: TYTONIDAE: *Tyto alba delicatula.* **STRIGIDAE:** *Ninox novaeseelandiae, N. albifacies albifacies.*

CORACIIFORMES: CORACIIDAE: *Eurystomus orientalis pacificus.*

FALCONIFORMES: FALCONIDAE: *Falco, F. cenchroides cenchroides, F. novaeseelandiae.*

PSITTACIFORMES: STRIGOPIDAE: *Nestor meridionalis meridionalis.* **PSITTACULIDAE:** *Platycercus eximius, Cyanoramphus novaeseelandiae novaeseelandiae.*

PASSERIFORMES: ACANTHISITTIDAE: *Acanthisitta chloris chloris, Xenicus longipes stokesii, X. gilviventris.* **MELIPHAGIDAE:** *Prosthemadera novaeseelandiae novaeseelandiae.* **ACANTHIZIDAE:**

Gerygone igata, G. albofrontata. **CALLAEIDAE:** *Callaeas wilsoni, C. cinereus, Philesturnus, P. carunculatus.*

NOTIOMYSTIDAE: *Notiomystis, N. cincta.* **MOHOUIDAE:** *Mohoua albicilla, M. ochrocephala, M. novaeseelandiae.*

ORIOLIDAE: *Turnagra tanagra.* **CAMPEPHAGIDAE:** *Coracina novaehollandiae.*

ARTAMIDAE: *Gymnorhina tibicen.* **RHIPIDURIDAE:** *Rhipidura fuliginosa fuliginosa, R. f. penita, R. leucophrys.*

PETROICIDAE: *Petroica macrocephala toitoi, P. m. macrocephala, P. m. dannesaerdi, P. longipes, P. australis australis.* **LOCUSTELLIDAE:** *Poodytes punctatus punctatus, P. p. caudatus.* **HIRUNDINIDAE:**

Petrochelidon nigricans. **ZOSTEROPIDAE:** *Zosterops lateralis lateralis.* **MOTACILLIDAE:** *Anthus novaeseelandiae novaeseelandiae.* **EMBERIZIDAE:** *Emberiza citrinella.*

In addition to the species entries above, the following 303 taxa have amended texts (mainly distribution records) that differ from the 2010 Checklist:

DINORNITHIFORMES: EMEIDAE: *Pachyornis australis.*

APTERYGIFORMES: APTERYGIDAE: *Apteryx, A. mantelli, A. rowi, A. owenii.*

ANSERIFORMES: ANATIDAE: *Dendrocygna eytoni, Cygnus atratus, C. sumnerensis sumnerensis, C. s. chathamicus, Cereopsis novaehollandiae, Branta canadensis maxima, Biziura delautori, Tadorna variegata, T. tadornoides, Mergus australis, Chenonetta jubata, Hymenolaimus malacorhynchos, Anas gracilis, A. castanea, A. chlorotis, A. aucklandica, A. nesiotis, A. acuta, A. platyrhynchos, Spatula rhynchotis, S. clypeata, Aythya australis.*

GALLIFORMES: ODONTOPHORIDAE: *Callipepla californica brunnescens.* **PHASIANIDAE:** *Synoicus ypsilophorus australis.*

PODICIPEDIFORMES: PODICIPEDIDAE: *Poliocephalus rufopectus, P. poliocephalus, Tachybaptus novaehollandiae.*

COLUMBIFORMES: COLUMBIDAE: *Streptopelia chinensis tigrina, Hemiphaga chathamensis.*

CUCULIFORMES: CUCULIDAE: *Cuculus optatus, Cacomantis pallidus, C. flabelliformis, Chrysococcyx lucidus lucidus, Eudynamys taitensis.*

APODIFORMES: APODIDAE: *Hirundapus caudacutus caudacutus, Apus pacificus pacificus.*

GRUIIFORMES: RALLIDAE: *Gallirallus philippensis assimilis, G. australis greyi, G. a. australis, G. a. hectori, G. a. scotti, Zapornia tabuensis tabuensis, Z. pusilla affinis, Tribonyx ventralis, Porphyrio, P. melanotus, P. m. melanotus, P. hochstetteri, Fulica atra australis.* **GRUIDAE:** *Grus.*

CHARADRIIFORMES: HAEMATOPODIDAE: *Haematopus unicolor, H. finschi, H. chathamensis.*

RECURVIROSTRIDAE: *Himantopus himantopus leucocephalus, H. novaeseelandiae, Recurvirostra novaehollandiae.* **CHARADRIIDAE:** *Pluvialis fulva, P. dominicus, P. squatarola, Charadrius obscurus, Ch. o. aquilonius, Ch. o. obscurus, Ch. semipalmatus, Ch. ruficapillus, Ch. bicinctus, Ch. b. bicinctus, Ch. b. exilis, Ch. mongolus, Ch. veredus, Anarhynchus frontalis, Thinornis novaeseelandiae, Erythrogonys cinctus, Vanellus miles novaehollandiae.* **SCOLOPACIDAE:** *Numenius madagascariensis, N. phaeopus variegatus, N. minutus, Limosa lapponica, L. l. baueri, L. limosa melanuroides, L. haemastica, Arenaria interpres, A. i. interpres, Calidris canutus, C. c. rogersi, C. pugnax, C. falcinellus sibirica, C. acuminata, C. himantopus, C. ferruginea, C. subminuta, C. ruficollis, C. alba, C. alpina, C. bairdii, C. minuta, C. minutilla, C. fuscicollis, C. melanotos, C. pusilla, C. mauri, Limnodromus semipalmatus, Coenocorypha, C. iredalei, C. pusilla, C. huegeli, C. aucklandica, C. a. aucklandica, C. a. meinertzhagenae, Phalaropus fulicarius, Ph. lobatus, Ph. tricolor, Xenus cinereus, Actitis hypoleucus, Tringa brevipes, T. incana, T. flavipes, T. nebularia.* **GLAREOLIDAE:** *Glareola maldivarum.* **STERCORARIIDAE:** *Stercorarius antarcticus, S. a. lonnbergi, S. maccormicki, S. longicaudus.* **LARIDAE:** *Anous stolidus pileatus, A. minutus minutus, Gygis alba candida, Chroicocephalus novaehollandiae scopulinus, Leucophaeus pipixcan, Larus dominicanus, Onychoprion fuscatus serratus, O. lunatus, O. anaethetus, Sternula albifrons, S. a. sinensis, S. nereis davisae, Gelochelidon nilotica, Hydroprogne caspia, Chlidonias hybridus javanicus, Sterna vittata bethunei, S. paradisea, S. hirundo longipennis, Thalasseus bergii cristatus.*

PHAETHONTIFORMES: PHAETHONTIDAE: *Phaethon rubricauda, Ph. lepturus dorothaeae.*

SPHENISCIFORMES: SPHENISCIDAE: *Aptenodytes forsteri, A. patagonicus, Pygoscelis papua taeniata, P. antarcticus, Eudyptes chrysocome, E. filholi, E. pachyrhynchos, E. robustus, E. sclateri, E. chrysolophus chrysolophus, E. c. schlegeli, Megadyptes antipodes antipodes, M. a. waitaha.*

PROCELLARIIFORMES: DIOMEDEIDAE: *Diomedea, D. exulans, D. antipodensis antipodensis, D. a. gibsoni, D. epomophora, D. sanfordi, Thalassarche chlororhynchos, T. carteri, T. chrysostoma, T. melanophris, T. bulleri platei, T. cauta cauta, T. c. steadi, Phoebetria fusca, P. palpebrata.* **OCEANITIDAE:** *Garrodia nereis, Pelagodroma marina, P. m. dulciae, P. m. maoriana, Fregetta grallaria, F. tropica, F. maoriana.* **HYDROBATIDAE:** *Hydrobates leucorhous leucorhous.* **PROCELLARIIDAE:** *Macronectes, M. halli, Daption capense, D. c. australe, Lugensa brevirostris, Pterodroma gouldi, Pt. lessonii, Pt. solandri, Pt. magentae, Pt. neglecta neglecta, Pt. mollis, Pt. inexpectata, Pt. externa, Pt. cervicalis, Pt. nigripennis, Pt. axillaris, Pt. pycrofti, Pt. leucoptera, Pt. leucoptera caledonica, Halobaena caerulea, Pachyptila vittata, P. desolata, P. tutur, P. crassirostris flemingi, Procellaria aequinoctialis, P. cinerea, Ardenna bulleri, A. tenuirostris, A. grisea, A. gravis, A. creatopus, Puffinus gavia, P. huttoni, P. elegans, Pelecanoides urinatrix urinatrix, P. u. chathamensis, P. u. exsul.*

SULIFORMES: FREGATIDAE: *Fregata minor palmerstoni, F. ariel ariel.* **SULIDAE:** *Morus capensis, Sula leucogaster plotus, S. dactylatra.* **ANHINGIDAE:** *Anhinga.* **PHALACROCORACIDAE:** *Microcarbo*

melanoleucus, *M. m. brevirostris*, *Phalacrocorax carbo novaehollandiae*, *Ph. sulcirostris*, *Ph. punctatus*, *Ph. featherstoni*, *Leucocarbo carunculatus*, *L. colensoi*.

PELECANIFORMES: PELECANIDAE: *Pelecanus conspicillatus*. **ARDEIDAE:** *Bubulcus ibis coromandus*, *Ardea pacifica*, *A. alba modesta*, *A. intermedia plumifera*, *Egretta novaehollandiae novaehollandiae*, *E. garzetta immaculata*, *E. sacra sacra*, *Nycticorax caledonicus australasiae*, **BOTAURINAE**. **THRESKIORNITHIDAE:** *Plegadis falcinellus*.

ACCIPITRIFORMES: ACCIPITRIDAE: *Milvus migrans*, *Circus approximans*, *C. teauteensis*.

STRIGIFORMES: TYTONIDAE: *Tyto alba delicatula*. **STRIGIDAE:** *Ninox novaeseelandiae novaeseelandiae*.

CORACIIFORMES: HALCYONIDAE: *Todiramphus sanctus vagans*.

FALCONIFORMES: FALCONIDAE: *Falco cenchroides cenchroides*, *F. novaeseelandiae*.

PSITTACIFORMES: STRIGOPIDAE: *Nestor meridionalis septentrionalis*, *N. notabilis*. **CACATUIDAE:** *Cacatua galerita*. **PSITTACULIDAE:** *Cyanoramphus novaeseelandiae novaeseelandiae*, *C. auriceps*, *C. malherbi*, *C. forbesi*.

PASSERIFORMES: ACANTHISITTIDAE: *Acanthisitta chloris*, *A. c. granti*, *A. c. chloris*, *Xenicus gilviventralis*. **MELIPHAGIDAE:** *Anthornis melanura melanura*, *Prosthemadera novaeseelandiae novaeseelandiae*, *P. n. chathamensis*. **CALLAEIDAE:** *Callaeas wilsoni*, *C. cinereus*, *Philesturnus rufusater*, *P. carunculatus*. **NOTIOMYSTIDAE:** *Notiomystis cincta*. **MOHOUIDAE:** *Mohoua albicilla*, *M. ochrocephala*.

CAMPEPHAGIDAE: *Coracina novaehollandiae*, *Lalage tricolor*. **ARTAMIDAE:** *Artamus personatus*, *A. superciliosus*. **RHIPIDURIDAE:** *Rhipidura fuliginosa fuliginosa*, *R. f. penita*, *R. leucophrys*. **CORVIDAE:** *Corvus moriorum pycrafti*. **PETROICIDAE:** *Petroica macrocephala macrocephala*, *P. m. chathamensis*, *P. m. marrineri*, *P. longipes*, *P. australis australis*, *P. a. rakiura*. **ALAUDIDAE:** *Alauda arvensis*. **LOCUSTELLIDAE:** *Poodytes punctatus*, *P. p. vealeae*, *P. p. wilsoni*. **HIRUNDINIDAE:** *Hirundo neoxena neoxena*, *Petrochelidon ariel*, *P. nigricans*. **STURNIDAE:** *Acridotheres*, *A. tristis*. **PRUNELLIDAE:** *Prunella modularis*. **MOTACILLIDAE:** *Anthus novaeseelandiae aucklandicus*. **FRINGILLIDAE:** *Chloris chloris*, *Carduelis carduelis britannica*.

EMBERIZIDAE: *Emberiza citrinella*.

APPENDIX 1: Fossil Birds of New Zealand

This section summarises new fossil bird species described from New Zealand between 2010 and 2021, and other information on New Zealand's fossil birds that is additional to information presented in the 2010 *Checklist*. Thirty species that became extinct more than c. 1 million years ago were described during these 12 years. These comprised two kiwi, a pseudotoothed bird, a palaelodus, a pigeon, an adzebill, two rails, two waders, nine penguins, an albatross, a petrel, a shearwater, one other seabird, a heron, a bittern, four parrots, and a passerine. One further fossil species (a tropicbird) was described but not named, and the previously described Moisley's penguin (*Tereingaornis moisleyi*) is no longer considered to be a diagnosable taxon.

SYSTEMATIC ACCOUNT

Order Apterygiformes has been inserted before Anseriformes:

Order APTERYGIIFORMES: Kiwi

Family APTERYGIDAE G.R. Gray: Kiwi

Genus †*Proapteryx* T. Worthy, J. Worthy, Tennyson, Salisbury, Hand & Scofield

Proapteryx T. Worthy, J. Worthy, Tennyson, Salisbury, Hand & Scofield, 2013: *Proc. 8th Int. Meeting Soc. Avian Paleont. Evol.*: 67 – Type species (by original designation) *Proapteryx micromeros* T. Worthy, J. Worthy, Tennyson, Salisbury, Hand & Scofield.

- †*Proapteryx micromeros* T. Worthy, J. Worthy, Tennyson, Salisbury, Hand & Scofield **St Bathans Kiwi**
Proapteryx micromeros T. Worthy, J. Worthy, Tennyson, Salisbury, Hand & Scofield, 2013: *Proc. 8th Int. Meeting Soc. Avian Paleont. Evol.*: 67 – St Bathans, Central Otago.

Known from two fossil remains only, from the Altonian Stage (early Miocene; 19–16 Ma) St Bathans assemblage, Otago (Worthy, Worthy, Tennyson, Salisbury *et al.* 2013).

Genus *Apteryx* Shaw

- †*Apteryx littoralis* Tennyson & Tomotani **Marton Kiwi**
Apteryx littoralis Tennyson & Tomotani, 2021: *Historical Biology* 34: 353 – Marton, North Island.

Known from a Pleistocene (1 Ma) epoch tarsometatarsus found in shallow marine sediment north of Marton (Tennyson & Tomotani 2021a).

Order Odontopterygiformes has been inserted after Anseriformes:

Order †ODONTOPTERYGIFORMES: Pseudotoothed Birds

We follow Bourdon (2005), Bourdon *et al.* (2010), and Mayr *et al.* (2021) in placing the family Pelagornithidae in its own order, and in using the common name ‘Pseudotoothed Birds’ for the order and family.

Family †PELAGORNITHIDAE Fürbringer: Pseudotoothed Birds

Genus *Protodontopteryx* has been inserted before genus *Pelagornis*:

Genus †*Protodontopteryx* G. Mayr, De Pietri, Love, Mannering & Scofield

Protodontopteryx G. Mayr, De Pietri, Love, Mannering & Scofield, 2021: *Papers Palaeont.* 7: 218 – Type species (by original designation) *Protodontopteryx ruthae* G. Mayr, De Pietri, Love, Mannering & Scofield.

- †*Protodontopteryx ruthae* G. Mayr, De Pietri, Love, Mannering & Scofield **Ruth's Pseudotoothed Bird**
Protodontopteryx ruthae G. Mayr, De Pietri, Love, Mannering & Scofield, 2021: *Papers Palaeont.* 7: 219 – Waipara River, North Canterbury.

Described from a partial skeleton found in an early Paleocene (c.62–61.5 Ma) deposit at the Waipara River (Mayr *et al.* 2021).

Genus †*Neodontornis* Harrison & Walker

Neodontornis Harrison & Walker, 1976: *Tertiary Res. Spec. Pap.* 2: 22 – Type species (by original designation) *Pseudodontornis stirtoni* Howard & Warter = *Neodontornis stirtoni* (Howard & Warter).

We follow Mayr & Rubilar-Rogers (2010) in synonymising *Neodontornis* with *Pelagornis*.

Genus †*Pelagornis* Lartet

Pelagornis Lartet, 1857: *Compt. Rend. Séa. Acad. Sci., Paris* 44: 740 – Type species (by monotypy) *Pelagornis miocaenus* Lartet.
Pseudodontornis Lambrecht, 1930: *Geol. Hungarica, Ser. Palaeont.* 7: 10 – Type species (by subsequent designation) *Odontopteryx longirostris* Spulski = *Pelagornis longirostris* (Spulski).
Osteodontornis Howard, 1957: *Santa Barbara Mus. Nat. Hist. Dept. Geol. Bull.* 1: 3 – Type species (by original designation)
Osteodontornis orri Howard = *Pelagornis orri* (Howard).
Neodontornis Harrison & Walker, 1976: *Tertiary Res. Spec. Pap.* 2: 22 – Type species (by original designation) *Pseudodontornis stirtoni* Howard & Warter = *Pelagornis stirtoni* (Howard & Warter).

Order Phoenicopteriformes has been inserted after order Odontopterygiformes:

Order PHOENICOPTERIFORMES: Flamingoes and Palaelodids

Family †PALAELODIDAE Stejneger: Palaelodids

Genus †*Palaelodus* Milne-Edwards

► †*Palaelodus aotearoa* T. Worthy, Tennyson, Archer & Scofield **New Zealand Palaelodus**
Palaelodus aotearoa T. Worthy, Tennyson, Archer & Scofield, 2010: *Rec. Aust. Mus.* 62: 80 – St Bathans, Central Otago.
Known only from fossil remains from the Altonian Stage (early Miocene; 19–16 Ma) St Bathans assemblage, Otago (Worthy, Tennyson *et al.* 2010).

Order COLUMBIFORMES: Pigeons and Doves

Family COLUMBIDAE Illiger: Pigeons and Doves

Subfamily inserted:

Subfamily RAPHINAE Wetmore: Fruit Doves

Raphidae Wetmore, 1930: *Proc. U.S. Nat. Mus.* 76(24): 5 – Type genus *Raphus* Brisson, 1760.

Genus *Deliaphaps* has been inserted before genus *Rupephaps*:

Genus †*Deliaphaps* De Pietri, Scofield, Tennyson, Hand & T. Worthy

Deliaphaps De Pietri, Scofield, Tennyson, Hand & T. Worthy, 2018: *Paleontología y Evolución de las Aves*: 57 – Type species (by original designation) *Deliaphaps zealandiensis* De Pietri, Scofield, Tennyson, Hand & T. Worthy.

► †*Deliaphaps zealandiensis* De Pietri, Scofield, Tennyson, Hand & T. Worthy **Zealandian Dove**
Deliaphaps zealandiensis De Pietri, Scofield, Tennyson, Hand & T. Worthy, 2018: *Paleontología y Evolución de las Aves*: 57 – Manuherikia River, Otago.

Known only from a carpometacarpus and two tentatively referred bones from the Altonian Stage (early Miocene; 19–16 Ma) St Bathans assemblage, Otago (De Pietri *et al.* 2018). *Deliaphaps* displays a combination of features also present in the extant genera *Caloenas*, *Didunculus*, and *Goura* (De Pietri *et al.* 2018). Based on placement of these genera within Raphinae (Pereira *et al.* 2007; Dickinson & Remsen 2013; Nowak *et al.* 2019), we include *Deliaphaps* in Raphinae.

Order GRUIFORMES: Rails and Cranes

Family Aptornithidae has been inserted before family Rallidae:

Family †APTORNITHIDAE Bonaparte: Adzebills

Genus †*Aptornis* G.A. Mantell

► †*Aptornis proasciarostratus* T. Worthy, Tennyson & Scofield **St Bathans Adzebill**
Aptornis proasciarostratus T. Worthy, Tennyson & Scofield, 2011: *Journ. Ornith.* 152: 671 – St Bathans, Central Otago.
Known only from fossil remains from the Altonian Stage (early Miocene; 19–16 Ma) St Bathans assemblage, Otago (Worthy *et al.* 2011a).

Family RALLIDAE Rafinesque: Rails, Gallinules, and Coots

Subfamily RALLINAE Rafinesque: Rails, Gallinules, and Coots

The following two genera and species have been inserted before *Pleistorallus*:

Genus †*Priscaweka* Mather, Tennyson, Scofield, De Pietri, Hand, Archer, Handley & T. Worthy

Priscaweka Mather, Tennyson, Scofield, De Pietri, Hand, Archer, Handley & T. Worthy, 2018: *Journ. Syst. Palaeont.* 17: 432 – Type species (by original designation) *Priscaweka parvales* Mather, Tennyson, Scofield, De Pietri, Hand, Archer, Handley & T. Worthy.

- †***Priscaweka parvales* Mather, Tennyson, Scofield, De Pietri, Hand, Archer, Handley & T. Worthy** **Bannockburn Crake**
Priscaweka parvales Mather, Tennyson, Scofield, De Pietri, Hand, Archer, Handley & T. Worthy, 2018: *Journ. Syst. Palaeont.* 17: 438 – St Bathans, Central Otago.

Known from the Altonian Stage (early Miocene; 19–16 Ma) St Bathans assemblage from the lower Bannockburn Formation, Manuherikia Group; near St Bathans, Otago (Mather *et al.* 2018). Phylogenetic relationships uncertain, but many features shared with *Gallirallus* and related genera (Mather *et al.* 2018).

Genus †*Litorallus* Mather, Tennyson, Scofield, De Pietri, Hand, Archer, Handley & T. Worthy

Litorallus Mather, Tennyson, Scofield, De Pietri, Hand, Archer, Handley & T. Worthy, 2018: *Journ. Syst. Palaeont.* 17: 441 – Type species (by original designation) *Litorallus livezeyi* Mather, Tennyson, Scofield, De Pietri, Hand, Archer, Handley & T. Worthy.

- †***Litorallus livezeyi* Mather, Tennyson, Scofield, De Pietri, Hand, Archer, Handley & T. Worthy** **Livezey's Rail**
Litorallus livezeyi Mather, Tennyson, Scofield, De Pietri, Hand, Archer, Handley & T. Worthy, 2018: *Journ. Syst. Palaeont.* 17: 441 – St Bathans, Central Otago.

Known from the Altonian Stage (early Miocene; 19–16 Ma) St Bathans assemblage from the lower Bannockburn Formation, Manuherikia Group; near St Bathans, Otago (Mather *et al.* 2018). Phylogenetic relationships uncertain, but likely from the same lineage as *Priscaweka* (Mather *et al.* 2018).

Order Charadriiformes has been inserted after order Gruiformes:

Order CHARADRIIFORMES: Waders, Gulls, & Terns

Suborder CHARADRII

Superfamily CHIONOIDEA Lesson

Family INCERTAE SEDIS

Genus †*Neilus* De Pietri, Scofield, Hand, Tennyson & T. Worthy

Neilus De Pietri, Scofield, Hand, Tennyson & T. Worthy, 2016: *Journ. Roy. Soc. N.Z.* 46: 186 – Type species (by original designation)
Neilus sansomae De Pietri, Scofield, Hand, Tennyson & T. Worthy.

- †***Neilus sansomae* De Pietri, Scofield, Hand, Tennyson & T. Worthy** **Sansom's Plover**
Neilus sansomae De Pietri, Scofield, Hand, Tennyson & T. Worthy, 2016: *Journ. Roy. Soc. N.Z.* 46: 186 – St Bathans, Central Otago.

Known only from fossil remains from the Altonian Stage (early Miocene; 19–16 Ma) St Bathans assemblage, Otago (De Pietri, Scofield, Hand *et al.* 2016).

Suborder SCOLOPACI

Superfamily THINOCOROIDEA Sundevall

Family INCERTAE SEDIS

Genus †*Hakawai* De Pietri, Scofield, Tennyson, Hand & T. Worthy

Hakawai De Pietri, Scofield, Tennyson, Hand & T. Worthy, 2016: *Journ. Syst. Palaeont.* 14: 605 – Type species (by original designation) *Hakawai melvillei* De Pietri, Scofield, Tennyson, Hand & T. Worthy.

- †*Hakawai melvillei* De Pietri, Scofield, Tennyson, Hand & T. Worthy **New Zealand Lake-wanderer**
Hakawai melvillei De Pietri, Scofield, Tennyson, Hand & T. Worthy, 2016: *Journ. Syst. Palaeont.* 14: 605 – St Bathans, Central Otago.

Known only from fossil remains from the Altonian Stage (early Miocene; 19–16 Ma) St Bathans assemblage, Otago (De Pietri, Scofield, Tennyson *et al.* 2016).

Order SPHENISCIFORMES: Penguins

Text added: We follow Clarke *et al.* (2003) and Ksepka *et al.* (2006, 2012) in restricting the family Spheniscidae to the common ancestor of living penguin taxa plus *Marplesornis*, and the descendants of this common ancestor. The following genera (all aged c. 60–20 Ma) are placed in families *incertae sedis* before family Spheniscidae, and in this sequence: *Waimanu*, *Muriwaimanu*, *Sequiwaimanu*, *Kupoupou*, *?Crossvallia*, *Kumimanu*, *Kaiika*, *Palaeudyptes*, *Pachydyptes*, *Kairuku*, *Platydyptes*, *Archaeospheniscus*, *Duntroonornis*, and *Korora*. If families are intended to be monophyletic, at least 12 new families would be required to contain the known diversity among fossil penguins, based on phylogenetic diagrams presented by Ksepka *et al.* (2012) and Mayr *et al.* (2018).

Families INCERTAE SEDIS: Fossil penguins

Genus †*Waimanu* Jones, Ando & Fordyce

Waimanu tuatahi has been moved to genus *Muriwaimanu*, which has been inserted after genus *Waimanu*:

Genus †*Muriwaimanu* G. Mayr, De Pietri, Love, Mannering & Scofield

Muriwaimanu G. Mayr, De Pietri, Love, Mannering & Scofield, 2018: *Journ. Vert. Paleont.* 37(6: e1398169-3): 3 – Type species (by original designation) *Waimanu tuatahi* Ando, Jones & Fordyce.

- †*Muriwaimanu tuatahi* (Ando, Jones & Fordyce) **Waipara Penguin**

Waimanu tuatahi Ando, Jones & Fordyce, 2006: in Slack *et al.*, *Molec. Biol. Evolution* 23(6): 1146 – Waipara River, North Canterbury.

Muriwaimanu tuatahi (Ando, Jones & Fordyce); Mayr *et al.* 2018, *Journ. Vert. Paleont.* 37(6: e1398169-3): 3.

Originally named as *Waimanu tuatahi*, this fossil species was considered to have sufficiently distinct tarsometatarsus morphology to be placed in its own genus by Mayr *et al.* (2018).

Genus †*Sequiwaimanu* G. Mayr, De Pietri, Love, Mannering & Scofield

Sequiwaimanu G. Mayr, De Pietri, Love, Mannering & Scofield, 2018: *Journ. Vert. Paleont.* 37(6: e1398169-3): 3 – Type species (by original designation) *Sequiwaimanu rosiaeae* G. Mayr, De Pietri, Love, Mannering & Scofield.

- †*Sequiwaimanu rosiaeae* G. Mayr, De Pietri, Love, Mannering & Scofield **Rosie's Penguin**

Sequiwaimanu rosiaeae G. Mayr, De Pietri, Love, Mannering & Scofield, 2018: *Journ. Vert. Paleont.* 37(6: e1398169-3): 4 – Waipara River, North Canterbury.

Described from a partial skeleton found in a late Teurian stage (late early Paleocene) deposit (61 Ma) at the Waipara River (Mayr *et al.* 2018).

Genus †*Kupoupou* Blokland, Reid, T. Worthy, Tennyson, Clarke & Scofield

Kupoupou Blokland, Reid, T. Worthy, Tennyson, Clarke & Scofield, 2019: *Palaeontologia Electronica* 22.3.78: 8 – Type species (by original designation) *Kupoupou stilwelli* Blokland, Reid, T. Worthy, Tennyson, Clarke & Scofield.

- †*Kupoupou stilwelli* Blokland, Reid, T. Worthy, Tennyson, Clarke & Scofield **Stilwell's Penguin**

Kupoupou stilwelli Blokland, Reid, T. Worthy, Tennyson, Clarke & Scofield, 2019: *Palaeontologia Electronica* 22.3.78: 16 – Maunganui Beach, Chatham Island.

Described by Blokland *et al.* (2019) from several fossils found in late early-middle Paleocene (62.5–60 Ma) deposits east of Tahatika Creek, north-western Chatham Island.

Genus †*Crossvallia* Tambussi, Reguero, Marenssi & Santillana

Crossvallia Tambussi, Reguero, Marenssi & Santillana, 2005: *Geobios* 38: 669 – Type species (by original designation) *Crossvallia unienwillia* Tambussi, Reguero, Marenssi & Santillana.

One species known from Seymour Island, Antarctica (Tambussi *et al.* 2005) and another New Zealand specimen tentatively referred to this genus.

- †?*Crossvallia waiparensis* G. Mayr, De Pietri, Love, Mannerling & Scofield Waipara Crossvallia Penguin
Crossvallia waiparensis G. Mayr, De Pietri, Love, Mannerling & Scofield, 2019: *Alcheringa* 44: 195 – Waipara River, North Canterbury.

Described from a fossil found in a Teurian Paleocene deposit (62–58 Ma), Waipara River, Canterbury (Mayr *et al.* 2019).

Genus †*Kumimanu* G. Mayr, Scofield, De Pietri & Tennyson

Kumimanu G. Mayr, Scofield, De Pietri & Tennyson, 2017: *Nature Communications* 8: 1927 (doi.org/10.1038/s41467-017-01959-6) 3 – Type species (by original designation) *Kumimanu biceae* G. Mayr, Scofield, De Pietri & Tennyson.

► †*Kumimanu biceae* G. Mayr, Scofield, De Pietri & Tennyson Bice's Penguin
Kumimanu biceae G. Mayr, Scofield, De Pietri & Tennyson, 2017: *Nature Communications* 8: 1927 (doi.org/10.1038/s41467-017-01959-6) 3 – Hampden Beach, Otago.

Described from a partial skeleton from the late Paleocene Moeraki Formation (60–55 Ma) near Oamaru (Mayr *et al.* 2017).

Genus †*Kaiika* Fordyce & Thomas

Kaiika Fordyce & Thomas, 2011: *New Zealand Journ. Geol. Geophys.* 54: 45 – Type species (by original designation) *Kaiika maxwelli* Fordyce & Thomas.

► †*Kaiika maxwelli* Fordyce & Thomas Maxwell's Penguin
Kaiika maxwelli Fordyce & Thomas, 2011: *New Zealand Journ. Geol. Geophys.* 54: 45 – Waihao River, South Canterbury.

Known from a single fossil humerus cast from the early Eocene (c.54 Ma), Waihao River, South Canterbury (Fordyce & Thomas 2011).

Genus †*Paleeudyptes* Huxley

► †*Paleeudyptes antarcticus* Huxley Huxley's Penguin

Text added: Huxley (1859) named *Paleeudyptes antarcticus* from a tarsometatarsus (BMNH A1048) from Kakanui, North Otago. Oliver (1930) followed Hector (1872) in referring a second specimen (NMNZ S.1449, which includes a humerus) from Seal Rock (near Punakaiki) to the same taxon, for which Oliver coined the name ‘Narrow-flipped Penguin’. This nomenclature was followed by Checklist Committee (2010). Ksepka *et al.* (2012) considered that NMNZ S.1449 could not be assigned to a currently recognised genus, and placed it in “Sphenisciformes indet.”. Further, Ksepka *et al.* (2012) accepted two specimens only within a much constrained *Paleeudyptes antarcticus*: the holotype, and a second tarsometatarsus from Burnside Quarry, Dunedin (OM GL430 (C47:17)). Therefore “Narrow-flipped penguin” is not an appropriate name for a taxon known from leg elements only. A name derived from Huxley’s specific epithet *antarcticus* is also not appropriate for a penguin known from the Otago Province only. We consider that a more appropriate name for *P. antarcticus* is Huxley’s penguin, in recognition of Thomas Huxley’s contribution in recognising and naming this, the first named fossil penguin.

Genus †*Kairuku* Ksepka, Fordyce, Ando & Jones

Kairuku Ksepka, Fordyce, Ando & Jones, 2012: *Journ. Vert. Paleont.* 32: 239 – Type species (by original designation) *Kairuku waitaki* Ksepka, Fordyce, Ando & Jones.

► †*Kairuku waewaeroa* Giovanardi, Ksepka & Thomas Junats' Penguin
Kairuku waewaeroa Giovanardi, Ksepka & Thomas, 2021: *Journ. Vert. Paleont.* 41: 4 – Kawhia Harbour.

Described from a single skeleton from Kawhia Harbour, from the Oligocene, 35–27 Ma (Giovanardi *et al.* 2021). Junats is a constriction of the Hamilton Junior Naturalist Club, who were involved in the discovery of the holotype; Junats’ penguin should have an initial capital.

► †*Kairuku waitaki* Ksepka, Fordyce, Ando & Jones Waitaki Penguin
Kairuku waitaki Ksepka, Fordyce, Ando & Jones, 2012: *Journ. Vert. Paleont.* 32: 239 – Waihao River, South Canterbury.

Described from a single skeleton from the Waihao River, South Canterbury, from the late Oligocene, 27–26 Ma (Ksepka *et al.* 2012).

► †*Kairuku grebneffi* Ksepka, Fordyce, Ando & Jones Grebneff's Penguin
Kairuku grebneffi Ksepka, Fordyce, Ando & Jones, 2012: *Journ. Vert. Paleont.* 32: 245 – Waipati catchment, North Otago.

Known from two fossils from the late Oligocene, 27–26 Ma, from the Waipati catchment of the Maerewhenua River near Duntroon, North Otago, and a specimen from the bank of the Waihao River, South Canterbury (Ksepka *et al.* 2012).

Genus †*Archaeospheniscus* Marples

- †*Archaeospheniscus lopdellorum* Marples Lopdells' Penguin

Archaeospheniscus lopdelli Marples, 1952: *New Zealand Geol. Surv. Pal. Bull.* 20: 41 – Dunroon, North Otago.

Archaeospheniscus lopdellorum Marples, 1952; Tennyson *et al.* 2010, *Notornis* 57: 54. Emendation.

The specific name should be *A. lopdellorum* (Lopdells' penguin) rather than *A. lopdelli* (Lopdell's penguin) (see Tennyson *et al.* 2010).

Family SPHENISCIDAE Bonaparte: Penguins

Genus †*Tereingaornis* Scarlett

- †*Tereingaornis moisleyi* Scarlett Moisley's Penguin

We accept the argument presented by Thomas, Ksepka *et al.* (2020) that the type material and referred material for *Tereingaornis moisleyi* are indistinguishable from living crested penguins (*Eudyptes*) or yellow-eyed penguin (*Megadyptes*), and cannot be referred to either genus. As *Tereingaornis* is undiagnosable, Thomas, Ksepka *et al.* (2020) recommend that *Tereingaornis moisleyi* be considered a *nomen dubium*, and that specimens in the type description be considered as "Spheniscidae indet."

Genus *Eudyptes* has been inserted after genus *Pygoscelis*:

Genus *Eudyptes* Vieillot

- †*Eudyptes atatu* Thomas, Tennyson, Scofield & Ksepka Dawn Crested Penguin

Eudyptes atatu Thomas, Tennyson, Scofield & Ksepka, 2020: *Proc. R. Soc. B* 287(1932): 2 – southern Taranaki.

Described from multiple well-preserved late Pliocene (3.36–3.06 Ma) fossils from southern Taranaki (Thomas, Tennyson *et al.* 2020).

Order PROCELLARIIFORMES: Albatrosses, Petrels, and Shearwaters

Family Diomedeidae has been inserted before family Procellariidae:

Family DIOMEDEIDAE G.R. Gray: Albatrosses

Genus †*Aldiomedes* G. Mayr & Tennyson

Aldiomedes G. Mayr & Tennyson, 2019: *Ibis* 162: 724 – Type species (by original designation) *Aldiomedes angustirostris* G. Mayr & Tennyson, 2019.

- †*Aldiomedes angustirostris* G. Mayr & Tennyson Alastair's Albatross

Aldiomedes angustirostris G. Mayr & Tennyson, 2019: *Ibis* 162: 724 – Ohawe Beach, south Taranaki.

Known only from a fossil skull found in a late Pliocene (3.4–3.0 Ma) deposit on the south Taranaki coast (Mayr & Tennyson, 2019).

Family PROCELLARIIDAE Leach: Fulmars, Petrels, Prions, and Shearwaters

This family now includes diving petrels (formerly Pelecanoididae).

Genus *Procellaria* Linnaeus

Procellaria Linnaeus, 1758: *Syst. Nat., 10th edition 1*: 131 – Type species (by subsequent designation) *Procellaria aequinoctialis* Linnaeus.

- †*Procellaria altirostris* Tennyson & Tomotani Deep-billed Petrel

Procellaria altirostris Tennyson & Tomotani, 2021: *Pap. Avulsos Zool. v.61: e20216116: 4* – Ohawe Beach, south Taranaki.

Known from a late Pliocene (3.6–3.0 Ma) partial skeleton found on the south Taranaki coast (Tennyson & Tomotani 2021b).

Genus *Ardenna* Reichenbach

Ardenna Reichenbach, 1853, *Hand. Spec. Ornithol., Die Vögel*, pt. 3 (1852), p. iv. Type, by original designation and monotypy, *Puffinus major* Faber, 1822 = *Procellaria gravis* O'Reilly, 1818.

- †*Ardenna davealleni* Tennyson & Mannerling **Pom's Shearwater**
Ardenna davealleni Tennyson & Mannerling, 2018: *Tuhinga* 29: 3 – Ohawa Beach, south Taranaki.
Known from two late Pliocene (3.4–3.0 Ma) partial skeletons found on the south Taranaki coast (Tennyson & Mannerling 2018).

Genus **Pelecanoides** La Cépède

- †*Pelecanoides miokuaka* T. Worthy, Tennyson, Jones, McNamara & Douglas **Miocene Diving Petrel**
This species (as the then sole representative of fossil Procellariiformes) was inadvertently placed before Sphenisciformes in the 2010 Checklist.

Order Pelecaniformes has been inserted after order Procellariiformes:

Order **PELECANIFORMES**: Pelicans, Herons, and Ibises

Family **ARDEIDAE** Leach: Herons & Bitterns

Subfamily ARDEINAE Leach: Herons and Egrets

Genus †**Matuku** Scofield, T. Worthy & Tennyson

Matuku Scofield, T. Worthy & Tennyson, 2010: *Rec. Aust. Mus.* 62: 93 – Type species (by original designation) *Matuku otagoense* Scofield, T. Worthy & Tennyson.

- †*Matuku otagoense* Scofield, T. Worthy & Tennyson **St Bathans Heron**
Matuku otagoense Scofield, T. Worthy & Tennyson, 2010: *Rec. Aust. Mus.* 62: 93 – St Bathans, Central Otago.
Known from fossil remains from the Altonian Stage (early Miocene; 19–16 Ma) St Bathans assemblage, Otago (Scofield *et al.* 2010).

Subfamily BOTAUERINAE Reichenbach: Bitterns

Genus †**Pikaihao** T. Worthy, J. Worthy, Tennyson & Scofield

Pikaihao T. Worthy, J. Worthy, Tennyson & Scofield, 2013: *Palaeont. Journ.* 47: 1333 – Type species (by original designation) *Pikaihao bartlei* T. Worthy, J. Worthy, Tennyson & Scofield.

- †*Pikaihao bartlei* T. Worthy, J. Worthy, Tennyson & Scofield **Bartle's Bittern**
Pikaihao bartlei T. Worthy, J. Worthy, Tennyson & Scofield, 2013: *Palaeont. Journ.* 47: 1333 – St Bathans, Central Otago.
Known only from fossil remains from the Altonian Stage (early Miocene; 19–16 Ma) St Bathans assemblage, Otago (Worthy, Worthy, Tennyson & Scofield 2013).

Order Psittaciformes has been inserted after order Pelecaniformes:

Order **PSITTACIFORMES**: Cockatoos, Parrots, and Parakeets

Family **STRIGOPIDAE** Bonaparte: Kākāpō, and Kākā and Kea

Subfamily **INCERTAE SEDIS**

Genus †**Heracles** T. Worthy, Hand, Archer, Scofield & De Pietri

Heracles T. Worthy, Hand, Archer, Scofield & De Pietri, 2019: *Biology Letters* 15: 3 – Type species (by original designation) *Heracles inexpectatus* T. Worthy, Hand, Archer, Scofield & De Pietri.

- †*Heracles inexpectatus* T. Worthy, Hand, Archer, Scofield & De Pietri **St Bathans Giant Parrot**
Heracles inexpectatus T. Worthy, Hand, Archer, Scofield & De Pietri, 2019: *Biology Letters* 15: 3 – Manuherikia River, Otago.
Known from two partial tibiotarsi from the Altonian Stage (early Miocene; 19–16 Ma) St Bathans assemblage, Otago (Worthy *et al.* 2019, 2021).

Subfamily NESTORINAE Bonaparte: Kākā and Kea

Genus †*Nelepsittacus* T. Worthy, Tennyson & Scofield

Nelepsittacus T. Worthy, Tennyson & Scofield, 2011: *Journ. Vert. Paleont.* 31: 1104 – Type species (by original designation) *Nelepsittacus minimus* T. Worthy, Tennyson & Scofield.

We recognise genus *Nelepsittacus* as part of subfamily Nestorinae (cf. Worthy *et al.* 2011b, who treated Nestoridae as a family).

► †***Nelepsittacus minimus*** T. Worthy, Tennyson & Scofield

Little St Bathans Parrot

Nelepsittacus minimus T. Worthy, Tennyson & Scofield, 2011: *Journ. Vert. Paleont.* 31: 1104 – St Bathans, Central Otago.

Known from fossil remains from the Altonian Stage (early Miocene; 19–16 Ma) St Bathans assemblage, Otago (Worthy *et al.* 2011b).

► †***Nelepsittacus donnertoni*** T. Worthy, Tennyson & Scofield

Merton's Parrot

Nelepsittacus donnertoni T. Worthy, Tennyson & Scofield, 2011: *Journ. Vert. Paleont.* 31: 1110 – St Bathans, Central Otago.

Known only from fossil remains from the Altonian Stage (early Miocene; 19–16 Ma) St Bathans assemblage, Otago (Worthy *et al.* 2011b).

► †***Nelepsittacus daphneleeae*** T. Worthy, Tennyson & Scofield

Lee's Parrot

Nelepsittacus daphneleeae T. Worthy, Tennyson & Scofield, 2011: *Journ. Vert. Paleont.* 31: 1112 – St Bathans, Central Otago.

Known only from fossil remains from the Altonian Stage (early Miocene; 19–16 Ma) St Bathans assemblage, Otago (Worthy *et al.* 2011b).

Order Passeriformes has been inserted after order Psittaciformes:

Order PASSERIFORMES: Passerine (Perching) Birds

Family ACANTHISITTIDAE Sundevall: New Zealand Wrens

Genus †*Kuiornis* T. Worthy, Hand, Nguyen, Tennyson, J. Worthy, Scofield, Boles & Archer

Kuiornis T. Worthy, Hand, Nguyen, Tennyson, J. Worthy, Scofield, Boles & Archer, 2010: *Journ. Vert. Paleont.* 30: 482 – Type species (by original designation) *Kuiornis indicator* T. Worthy, Hand, Nguyen, Tennyson, J. Worthy, Scofield, Boles & Archer.

► †***Kuiornis indicator*** T. Worthy, Hand, Nguyen, Tennyson, J. Worthy, Scofield, Boles & Archer

St Bathans Wren

Kuiornis indicator T. Worthy, Hand, Nguyen, Tennyson, J. Worthy, Scofield, Boles & Archer, 2010: *Journ. Vert. Paleont.* 30: 482 – St Bathans, Central Otago.

Known only from fossil remains from the Altonian Stage (early Miocene; 19–16 Ma) St Bathans assemblage, Otago (Worthy, Hand *et al.* 2010).

INCERTAE SEDIS

Order (unknown)

Genus *Australornis* has been inserted after genus *Manu*:

Genus †*Australornis* G. Mayr & Scofield

Australornis G. Mayr & Scofield, 2014: *Journ. Roy. Soc. N.Z.* 44: 49 – Type species (by original designation) *Australornis lovei* G. Mayr & Scofield.

► †***Australornis lovei*** G. Mayr & Scofield

Love's Paleocene Seabird

Australornis lovei G. Mayr & Scofield, 2014: *Journ. Roy. Soc. N.Z.* 44: 49 – Waipara River, North Canterbury.

Known from one fossil only, from the Waipara River, North Canterbury, from a late early Paleocene deposit, 61.6–60.5 Ma (Mayr & Scofield 2014).

APPENDIX 2

Failed introductions of foreign birds to New Zealand

The information presented is largely unchanged, apart from: (1) scaly-breasted lorikeet (*Trichoglossus chlorolepidotus*) has been moved from the main Checklist to Appendix 2, Section 2; (2) feral chicken (*Gallus gallus gallus*) and crimson rosella (*Platycercus elegans*) have been moved from the main Checklist to Appendix 2, Section 3; (3) ring-necked parakeet (*Psittacula krameri*) has been added to Appendix 2, Section 3 (see below); (4) family, genus and species sequences have been reorganised to match the sequence in the main Checklist or (for families not represented in the main Checklist) Dickinson & Remsen (2013) or Dickinson & Christidis (2014); (5) the following species have updated scientific names or family placements:

- Eurasian widgeon (*Mareca penelope* (Linnaeus)) changed from *Anas penelope* Linnaeus.
- Mountain quail (*Oreortyx pictus* (Douglas)) changed from *Oreortyx picta*.
- Asian blue-breasted quail (*Synoicus chinensis chinensis* (Linnaeus)) changed from *Coturnix chinensis chinensis* (Linnaeus), with added synonym: *Synoicus chinensis chinensis* (Linnaeus); Dickinson & Remsen 2013, *Howard & Moore Complete Checklist Birds World*, 4th edition, 1: 34.
- Red grouse (*Lagopus lagopus scotica* (Latham)) changed from *Lagopus scoticus* (Latham), with added synonym: *Lagopus lagopus scotica* (Latham); Dickinson & Remsen 2013, *Howard & Moore Complete Checklist Birds World*, 4th edition, 1: 45.
- Painted buttonquail (*Turnix varius* (Latham)) changed from *Turnix varia*.
- Twite (*Linaria flavirostris* (Linnaeus)) changed from *Carduelis flavirostris* (Linnaeus), with added synonym: *Linaria flavirostris* (Linnaeus); Zuccon, Prŷs-Jones, Rasmussen & Ericson 2012, *Mol. Phyl. Evol.* 62: 594.
- Reed bunting (*Schoeniclus schoeniclus* (Linnaeus)) changed from *Emberiza schoeniclus* (Linnaeus), with added synonym: *Schoeniclus schoeniclus* (Linnaeus); Dickinson & Christidis 2014, *Howard & Moore Complete Checklist Birds World*, 4th edition, 2: 356.
- Whitethroat (*Currucà communis* (Latham)) changed from *Sylvia communis* Latham.
- Tasmanian brown quail *Synoicus ypsilophorus ypsilophorus* (Bosc) changed from *Coturnix ypsilophora ypsilophora* (Bosc) [sic], with added synonym: *Synoicus ypsilophorus ypsilophorus* (Bosc); Dickinson & Remsen 2013, *Howard & Moore Complete Checklist Birds World*, 4th edition, 1: 34.
- Eurasian linnet (*Linaria cannabina* (Linnaeus)) changed from *Carduelis cannabina* (Linnaeus), with added synonyms: *Linaria cannabina* (Linnaeus); Bechstein 1802, *Ornith. Taschenb. Deutschland* 1: 191, and *Linaria cannabina* (Linnaeus); Zuccon, Prŷs-Jones, Rasmussen & Ericson 2012, *Mol. Phyl. Evol.* 62: 594.
- Eurasian siskin (*Spinus spinus* (Linnaeus)) changed from *Carduelis spinus* (Linnaeus), with added synonyms: *Spinus spinus* (Linnaeus); Koch 1816, *Syst. Baierischen Zool.* 1: 232, and *Spinus spinus* (Linnaeus); Zuccon, Prŷs-Jones, Rasmussen & Ericson 2012, *Mol. Phyl. Evol.* 62: 594.
- Summer tanager (*Piranga rubra* (Linnaeus)) moved to Cardinalidae from Thraupidae.
- Eurasian robin (*Erithacus rubecula* (Linnaeus)) moved to Muscicapidae from Turdidae.

Section 3

PSITTACULIDAE

Psittacula krameri has been inserted before *Platycercus elegans*:

***Psittacula krameri* (Scopoli)**

Psittacus krameri Scopoli, 1769: *Annus I, Hist. Nat.*: 31 – no locality = Senegal (*fide* Neumann 1915, *Orn. Monatsb.* 23: 73).

Psittacula krameri (Scopoli, 1769); Peters 1937, *Check-list Birds World* 3: 242.

Rose-ringed Parakeet

Accidental and deliberate illegal releases of cage birds since c. 2005, mainly in the northern North Island (including Auckland, Hamilton, Rotorua, and Hastings), plus an accidental release of 30 birds in Christchurch in 2016 (Miskelly 2018). Listed as an Unwanted Organism under the Biosecurity Act, with efforts made to recapture or kill free-flying birds. Subspecies unknown but likely to be either or both *P. k. borealis* (Neumann, 1915) and *P. k. manillensis* (Bechstein, 1800) from India, Pakistan, Nepal, Myanmar, and Sri Lanka (Miskelly 2018).

APPENDIX 3

Alternative English, Māori, and Moriori names for New Zealand birds

Selecting preferred Māori and English names for New Zealand birds is a difficult and often controversial task, as multiple names are used for many species. Māori often named different ages, sexes, and growth stages of birds, based on the species' use and whakapapa (genealogy). For example, the name "tītī" has gained wide acceptance in recent decades as the Māori name for the sooty shearwater *Ardenna grisea*. However, it is not the name that many Rakiura Māori would give an individual adult *A. grisea* seen in flight. "Tītī" is mainly used for chicks of *A. grisea* at an age when they are ready for harvest. There is no agreement among muttonbirders on the name for adult *A. grisea*, with at least four different names in local use. Under-weight, unharvestable chicks have yet another name.

Furthermore, Māori apparently did not recognise as different, and separately name, certain similar-looking or closely-related species of birds. Different iwi (tribes) also have different dialects, and thus the spelling of essentially the same name may differ between different regions in the country. In the late 19th Century, Māori bird names were taken from the works of prominent Pākehā (Europeans) who lived and worked with particular iwi. This is how the names used by certain iwi became more prevalent in recent usage than other tribal names for the same bird.

Appendix 3 of Checklist Committee (2022) provides a preliminary list of alternative English, Māori, and Moriori names for New Zealand birds, to supplement the names presented in the main Checklist, and to allow users to link to species of interest, that may have been searched for using an alternative name. Birds are listed alphabetically by their scientific name. The Checklist Committee intends to expand this list during subsequent revisions of the Checklist. We invite submissions of additional names that have been used in publications (including websites, signage, and brochures) – please email examples of these to checklist@birdsnz.org.nz (please include a pdf, hyperlink, scan, or photograph showing the name in print).

Authors and editors of Birds New Zealand publications may use alternative bird names from this list, provided an explanation is given for why the name is used in preference to that in the main Checklist. Languages, and usage of bird names, evolve over time. If and when an alternative name is demonstrably the most frequently used name for a bird over the previous decade (at least) of *Notornis* (the scientific journal of Birds New Zealand / Ornithological Society of New Zealand), it will be moved to the main Checklist.

LITERATURE CITED

- Aggerbeck, M.; Fjeldså, J.; Christidis, L.; Fabre, P-H. & Jonsson, A. 2013. Resolving deep lineage divergences in core corvoid passerine birds supports a proto-Papuan island origin. *Molecular Phylogenetics and Evolution* 70: 272–285.
- Aidala, Z.; Chong, N.; Anderson, M.G.; Ortiz-Catedral, L.; Jamieson, I.G.; Briskie, J.V.; Cassey, P.; Gill, B.J. & Hauber, M.E. 2013. Phylogenetic relationships of the genus *Mohoua*, endemic hosts of New Zealand's obligate brood parasitic long-tailed cuckoo (*Eudynamys taitensis*). *Journal of Ornithology* 154: 1127–1133.
- Alström, P.; Cibois, A.; Irestedt, M.; Zuccon, D.; Gelang, M.; Fjeldså, J.; Andersen, M.J.; Moyle, R.G.; Pasquet, E. & Olsson, U. 2018. Comprehensive molecular phylogeny of the grassbirds and allies (Locustellidae) reveals extensive non-monophyly of traditional genera, and a proposal for a new classification. *Molecular Phylogenetics and Evolution* 127: 367–375.
- Alström, P.; Fregin, S.; Norman, J.A.; Ericson, P.G.P.; Christidis, L. & Olsson, U. 2011. Multilocus analysis of a taxonomically densely sampled dataset reveal extensive non-monophyly in the avian family Locustellidae. *Molecular Phylogenetics and Evolution* 58: 513–526.
- Andersson, M. 1999a. Hybridization and skua phylogeny. *Proceedings of the Royal Society of London series B* 266: 1579–1585.
- Andersson, M. 1999b. Phylogeny, behaviour, plumage evolution and neoteny in skuas Stercorariidae. *Journal of Avian Biology* 30: 205–215.
- Austin, J.J.; Bretagnolle, V. & Pasquet, E. 2004. A global molecular phylogeny of the small *Puffinus* shearwaters and implications for systematics of the little–Audubon's shearwater complex. *Auk* 121: 847–864.
- Baker, A.J.; Daugherty, C.H.; Colbourne, R. & McLennan, J.L. 1995. Flightless brown kiwis of New Zealand possess extremely subdivided population structure and cryptic species like small mammals. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America* 92: 8254–8258.
- Baker, A.J.; Pereira, S.L. & Paton, T.A. 2007. Phylogenetic relationships and divergence times of Charadriiformes genera: multigene evidence for the Cretaceous origin of at least 14 clades of shorebirds. *Biology Letters* 3: 205–209.
- Baker, A.J.; Pereira, S.L.; Rogers, D.I.; Elbourne, R. & Hassell, C.J. 2007. Mitochondrial-DNA evidence shows the Australian painted snipe is a full species, *Rostratula australis*. *Emu* 107: 185–189.
- Banks, J.C.; Cruickshank, R.H.; Drayton, G.M. & Paterson, A.M. 2008. Few genetic differences between Victorian and Western Australian blue penguins, *Eudyptula minor*. *New Zealand Journal of Zoology* 35: 265–270.
- Banks, R.C. 2012. Classification and nomenclature of the sandpipers (Aves: Arenariinae). *Zootaxa* 3513: 86–88.
- Banks, R.C.; Cicero, C.; Dunn, J.L.; Kratter, A.W.; Rasmussen, P.C.; Remsen, J.V.; Rising, J.D. & Stotz, D.F. 2006. Forty-seventh supplement to the American Ornithologists' Union Check-list of North American Birds. *Auk* 123: 926–936.
- Barker, D.; Carroll, J.W.A.; Edmonds, H.K.; Fraser, J.R. & Miskelly, C.M. 2005. Discovery of a previously unknown *Coenocorypha* snipe in the Campbell Island group, New Zealand subantarctic. *Notornis* 52: 143–149.
- Beaman, M.; Madge, S. 1998. *The handbook of bird identification for Europe and the Western Palearctic*. New Jersey USA: Princeton. 869 pp.
- Bemmels, J.B.; Mikkelsen, E.K.; Haddrath, O.; Colbourne, R.M.; Robertson, H.A. & Weir, J.T. 2021. Demographic decline and lineage-specific adaptations characterize New Zealand kiwi. *Proceedings of the Royal Society B* 288: 20212362. <https://doi.org/10.1098/rspb.2021.2362>
- BirdLife International. 2021. Species factsheet: *Pachyptila macgillivrayi*. Downloaded from <http://www.birdlife.org> on 21 Sep. 2021.
- Blokland, J.C.; Reid, C.M.; Worthy, T.H.; Tennyson, A.J.D.; Clarke J.A. & Scofield, R.P. 2019. Chatham Island Paleocene fossils provide insight into the palaeobiology, evolution, and diversity of early penguins (Aves, Sphenisciformes). *Palaeontologia Electronica* 22.3.78 (doi.org/10.26879/1009): 1–92.
- Boast, A.P.; Chapman, B.; Herrera, M.B.; Worthy, T.H.; Scofield, R.P.; Tennyson, A.J.D.; Houde, P.; Bunce, M.; Cooper, A.; Mitchell, K.J. 2019. Mitochondrial genomes from New Zealand's extinct adzebills (Aves: Aptornithidae: *Aptornis*) support a sister-taxon relationship with the Afro-Madagascan Sarothruridae. *Diversity* 11(2): Article 24. doi:10.3390/d11020024.
- Bock, W.J. 1994. History and nomenclature of avian family-group names. *Bulletin of the American Museum of Natural History* 222: 1–281.
- Bonaparte, C.L. 1849. *Conspectus Systematis Ornithologiae. Editio altera reformata additis synonymis Grayanis (a) Classis II Aves*. M. Westerman & Fil: Amsterdam. 2 pp.
- Bonaparte, C.L. 1857. *Conspectus generum avium*. Volume 2. Lugduni Batavorum (Leiden, Netherlands): E.J. Brill. 232 pp.
- Bourdon, E. 2005. Osteological evidence for sister group relationship between pseudo-toothed birds (Aves: Odontopterygiformes) and waterfowls (Anseriformes). *Naturwissenschaften* 92: 586–591.
- Bourdon, E.; Amaghaz, M. & Bouya, B. 2010. Pseudotoothed birds (Aves, Odontopterygiformes) from the early Tertiary of Morocco. *American Museum Novitates* 3704: 1–71.
- Braun, M.J. & Brumfield, R.T. 1998. Enigmatic phylogeny of skuas: an alternative hypothesis. *Proceedings of the Royal Society of London series B* 265: 995–999.
- Brazil, M. 2009. *Birds of East Asia*. London: Christopher Helm. 528 pp.
- Bretagnolle, V.; Zotier, R. & Jouventin, P. 1990. Comparative population biology of four prions (genus *Pachyptila*) from the Indian Ocean and consequences for their taxonomic status. *Auk* 107: 305–316.
- Bridge, E.S.; Jones, A.W. & Baker, A.J. 2005. A phylogenetic framework for the terns (Sternini) inferred from mtDNA sequences: implications for taxonomy and plumage evolution. *Molecular Phylogenetics and Evolution* 35: 459–469.
- Brodkorb, P. 1967. Catalogue of fossil birds. Part 3 (Ralliformes, Ichthyornithiformes, Charadriiformes). *Bulletin of the Florida State Museum, Biological Sciences Series* 11: 99–220. 499 pp.
- Brooke, M.L. 2004. *Albatross and petrels across the world*. Oxford: Oxford University Press. xviii + 499 pp.
- Brothers, N. & Bone C. 2008. The response of burrow-nesting petrels and other vulnerable bird species to vertebrate pest management and climate change on sub-Antarctic Macquarie Island. *Papers and Proceedings of the Royal Society of Tasmania* 142: 123–148.
- Brothers, N. & Ledingham, R. 2008. The avifauna of Bishop and Clerk Islets and its relationship to nearby Macquarie Island. *Papers and Proceedings of the Royal Society of Tasmania* 142: 117–121.

- Bruch N.D. 1853: Monographische Uebersicht der Gattung *Larus* Lin. *Journal für Ornithologie* 1: 96–108.
- Buller, W.L. 1869. On the ornithology of New Zealand. *Transactions of the New Zealand Institute* 1: 1–20.
- Buller, W.L. 1872–73. *A history of the birds of New Zealand*. London: John van Voorst. xxiv + 384 pp.
- Buller, W.L. 1882. *Manual of the birds of New Zealand*. Wellington: Government Printer. xii + 107 pp.
- Buller, W.L. 1887–88. *A history of the birds of New Zealand*. Second edition. London: published by the author. Volume 1: lxxxiv + 250 pp., 24 pls; Volume 2: xvi + 359 pp., 26 pls.
- Bunce, M.; Worthy, T.H.; Phillips, M.J.; Holdaway, R.N.; Willersley, E.; Haile, J.; Shapiro, B.; Scofield, R.P.; Drummond, A.; Kamp, P.J.J. & Cooper, A. 2009. The evolutionary history of the extinct ratite moa and New Zealand neogene paleogeography. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA* 106: 20646–20651.
- Burbidge, M.L.; Colbourne, R.M.; Robertson, H.A. & Baker, A.J. 2003. Molecular and other biological evidence supports the recognition of at least three species of brown kiwi. *Conservation Genetics* 4: 167–177.
- Burg, N.A. 2018. Using molecular markers to trace the population history of volant organisms at differing temporal scales. PhD Thesis. New York, City University of New York. Retrieved from https://academicworks.cuny.edu/gc_etds/2577/. 122 pp.
- Burleigh, J.G.; Kimball, R.T. & Braun, E.L. 2015. Building the avian tree of life using a large-scale, sparse supermatrix. *Molecular Phylogenetics and Evolution* 84: 53–63.
- Cake, M.; Black, A. & Joseph, L. 2018. The generic taxonomy of the Australian magpie and Australo-Papuan butcherbirds is not all black-and-white. *Bulletin of the British Ornithologists' Club* 138(4): 346–359.
- Checklist Committee (C.A. Fleming, Convener). 1953. *Checklist of New Zealand birds*. Wellington: A.H. & A.W. Reed. 80 pp.
- Checklist Committee (F.C. Kinsky, Convener). 1970. *Annotated checklist of the birds of New Zealand including the birds of the Ross Dependency*. Second edition. Wellington: A.H. & A.W. Reed. 96 pp.
- Checklist Committee (E.G. Turbott, Convener). 1990. *Checklist of the birds of New Zealand and the Ross Dependency, Antarctica*. Third edition. Auckland: Ornithological Society of New Zealand & Random Century New Zealand Ltd. xvi + 247 pp.
- Checklist Committee (OSNZ) 2010. *Checklist of the birds of New Zealand, Norfolk and Macquarie Islands, and the Ross Dependency, Antarctica*. Fourth edition. Wellington, Ornithological Society of New Zealand & Te Papa Press. 500 pp.
- Checklist Committee (OSNZ) 2022. *Checklist of the birds of New Zealand*. Fifth edition. Wellington: Ornithological Society of New Zealand. 334 pp.
- Chesser, R.T.; Billerman, S.M.; Burns, K.J.; Cicero, C.; Dunn, J.L.; Kratter, A.W.; Lovette, I.J.; Mason, N.A.; Rasmussen, P.C.; Remsen, J.V. Jr.; Stotz, D.F. & Winker, K. 2020. *Check-list of North American Birds* (online). American Ornithological Society. <http://checklist.aou.org/taxa>
- Chesser, R.T.; Burns, K.J.; Cicero, C.; Dunn, J.L.; Kratter, A.W.; Lovette, I.J.; Rasmussen, P.C.; Remsen, J.V.; Rising, J.D.; Stotz, D.F. & Winker, K. 2016. Fifty-seventh supplement to the American Ornithologists' Union *Check-list of North American birds*. *Auk* 133: 544–560.
- Chesser, R.T.; Burns, K.J.; Cicero, C.; Dunn, J.L.; Kratter, A.W.; Lovette, I.J.; Rasmussen, P.C.; Remsen, J.V.; Rising, J.D.; Stotz, D.F. & Winker, K. 2019. Sixtieth supplement to the American Ornithologists' Union *Check-list of North American Birds*. *Auk: Ornithological Advances* 136: 1–23.
- Christidis, L. & Boles, W.E. 2008. *Systematics and taxonomy of Australian birds*. Collingwood, Victoria: CSIRO Publishing. 277 pp.
- Christidis, L.; Davies, K.; Westerman, M.; Christian, P.D. & Schodde, R. 1996. Molecular assessment of the taxonomic status of Cox's sandpiper. *Condor* 98: 459–463.
- Christidis, L.; Leeton, P.R. & Westerman, M. 1996. Were bowerbirds part of the New Zealand fauna? *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America* 93: 3898–3901.
- Chu, P.C. 1998. A phylogeny of the gulls (Aves: Larinae) inferred from osteological and integumentary characters. *Cladistics* 14: 1–43.
- Chu, P.C.; Eisenschenk, S.K. & Zhu, S.-T. 2009. Skeletal morphology and the phylogeny of skuas (Aves: Charadriiformes, Stercorariidae). *Zoological Journal of the Linnean Society* 157: 612–621.
- Cibois, A.; Thibault, J.-C.; Rocamora, G. & Pasquet, E. 2016. Molecular phylogeny and systematics of blue and grey noddies (*Procelsterna*). *Ibis* 158: 433–438.
- Clarke, J.A.; Olivero, E.B. & Puerta, P. 2003. Description of the earliest fossil penguin from South America and first Paleogene vertebrate locality of Tierra del Fuego, Argentina. *American Museum Novitates* 3423: 1–18.
- Clements, J.F.; Schulenberg, T.S.; Iliff, M.J.; Billerman, S.M.; Fredericks, T.A.; Sullivan, B.L. & Wood, C.L. 2019. The eBird/Clements Checklist of Birds of the World: v2019. Downloaded from <https://www.birds.cornell.edu/clementschecklist/download/>
- Cohen, B.L.; Baker, A.J.; Blechschmidt, K.; Dittmann, D.L.; Furness, R.W.; Gerwin, J.A.; Helbig, A.J.; de Korte, J.; Marshall, H.D.; Palma, R.L.; Peter, H.-U.; Ramli, R.; Siebold, I.; Willcox, M.S.; Wilson, R.H. & Zink, R.M. 1997. Enigmatic phylogeny of skuas (Aves: Stercorariidae). *Proceedings of the Royal Society of London series B* 264: 181–190.
- Cole, T.L.; Dutoit, L.; Dussex, N.; Hart, T.; Alexander, A.; Younger, J.L.; Clucas, G.V.; Frugone, M.J.; Cherel, Y.; Cuthbert, R.; Ellenberg, U.; Fiddaman, S.R.; Hiscock, J.; Houston, D.; Jouventin, P.; Mattern, T.; Miller, G.; Miskelly, C.; Nolan, P.; Polito, M.J.; Quillfeldt, P.; Ryan, P.G.; Smith, A.; Tennyson, A.J.D.; Thompson, D.; Wienecke, B.; Vianna, J.A. & Waters, J.M. 2019. Receding ice drove parallel expansions in Southern Ocean penguins. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences* 116: 26690–26696.
- Cole, T.L.; Ksepka, D.T.; Mitchell, K.J.; Tennyson, A.J.D.; Thomas, D.B.; Pan, H.; Zhang, G.; Rawlence, N.J.; Wood, J.R.; Bover, P.; Bouzat, J.L.; Cooper, A.; Fiddaman, S.; Hart, T.; Miller, G.; Ryan, P.G.; Shepherd, L.D.; Wilmshurst, J.M. & Waters, J.M. 2019. Mitogenomes uncover extinct penguin taxa and reveal island formation as a key driver of speciation. *Molecular Biology and Evolution* 36: 784–797. doi:10.1093/molbev/msz017
- Conklin, J.R.; Verkuil, Y.I.; Battley, P.F.; Hassell, C.J.; ten Horn, J.; Johnson, J.A.; Tomkovich, P.S.; Baker, A.J.; Piersma, T. & Fontaine, M.C. 2022. Global flyway evolution in red knots *Calidris canutus* and genetic evidence for a Nearctic refugium. *Molecular Ecology*, 00, 1–16, doi.org/10.1111/mec.16379
- Cooper, A. 1997. Ancient DNA and avian systematics: from Jurassic Park to modern island extinctions. Pp. 345–373 in Mindell, D. (Ed.) *Avian Molecular Evolution and Molecular Systematics*. New York: Academic Press.
- Cooper, A.; Lalueza-Fox, C.; Anderson, S.; Rambaut, A.; Austin, J. & Ward, R. 2001. Complete mitochondrial genome sequences of two extinct moas clarify ratite evolution. *Nature* 409: 704–707.

- Cooper, A.; Mourer-Chauvire, C.; Chambers, G.K.; Haeseler, A.; Wilson, A.C. & Paabo, S. 1992. Independent origins of New Zealand moas and kiwis. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America* 89: 8741–8744.
- Cracraft, J. 2013. Avian higher-level relationships and classification: Nonpasseriforms. Pp. xxi–xlvi in: Dickinson, E.C. & Remsen, J.V. (eds). 2013. *The Howard & Moore complete checklist of the birds of the world*. Fourth edition. Vol. 1, Non-passers. Eastbourne, UK: Aves Press.
- Cracraft, J. 2014. Avian higher-level relationships and classification: Passeriforms. Pp. xvii–xlv in: Dickinson, E.C. & Christidis, L. (eds). 2014. *The Howard & Moore complete checklist of the birds of the world*. Fourth edition. Vol. 2, Passerines. Eastbourne, UK: Aves Press.
- Cracraft, J.; Barker, F.K.; Braun, M.; Harshman, J.; Dyke, G.J.; Feinstein, J.; Stanley, S.; Cibois, A.; Schikler, P.; Beresford, P.; Garcia-Moreno, J.; Sorenson, M.D.; Yuri, T. & Mindell, D.P. 2004. Chapter 27. Phylogenetic relationships among modern birds (Neornithes). Pp. 468–489. In: Cracraft, J. & Donoghue, M.J. (Eds). *Assembling the tree of life*. New York: Oxford University Press. 576 pp.
- Crowe, T.M.; Bowie, R.C.K.; Bloomer, P.; Mandiwana, T.G.; Hedderson, T.A.J.; Randi, E.; Pereira, S.L. & Wakeling, J. 2006. Phylogenetics, biogeography and classification of, and character evolution in, gamebirds (Aves: Galliformes): effects of character exclusion, data partitioning and missing data. *Cladistics* 22: 495–532.
- David, N. & Gosselin, M. 2002a. Gender agreement of avian species names. *Bulletin of the British Ornithologists' Club* 122: 14–49.
- David, N. & Gosselin, M. 2002b. The grammatical gender of avian genera. *Bulletin of the British Ornithologists' Club* 122: 257–282.
- de Moya, R.S.; Allen, J.M.; Sweet, A.D.; Walden, K.K.O.; Palma, R.L.; Smith, V.S.; Cameron, S.L.; Valim, M.P.; Galloway, T.D.; Weckstein, J.D. & Johnson, K.P. 2019. Extensive host-switching of avian feather lice following the Cretaceous-Paleogene mass extinction event. *Communications Biology* 2: 445, doi.org/10.1038/s42003-019-0689-7.
- De Pietri, V.L.; Scofield, R.P.; Hand, S.J.; Tennyson, A.J.D. & Worthy, T.H. 2016. Sheathbill-like birds (Charadriiformes: Chionoidea) from the Oligocene and Miocene of Australasia. *Journal of the Royal Society of New Zealand* 46: 181–199.
- De Pietri, V.L.; Scofield, R.P.; Tennyson, A.J.D.; Hand, S.J. & Worthy, T.H. 2016. Wading a lost southern connection: Miocene Fossils from New Zealand reveal a new lineage of shorebirds (Charadriiformes) linking Gondwanan avifaunas. *Journal of Systematic Palaeontology* 14: 603–616.
- De Pietri, V.L.; Scofield, R.P.; Tennyson, A.J.D.; Hand, S.J. & Worthy, T.H. 2018. The diversity of early Miocene pigeons (Columbidae) in New Zealand. Pp 49–68 in: Acosta Hospitaleche, C.; Agnolin, F.L.; Haidr, N.; Noriega, J.I.; Tambussi, C.P. (Eds) *Paleontología y Evolución de las Aves*. Proceedings of the 9th International Meeting of the Society of Avian Paleontology and Evolution. Contribuciones del MACN 7, 2017.
- del Hoyo, J. & Collar, N.J. 2016. *HBW and BirdLife International illustrated checklist of the birds of the world*. Volume 2: Passerines. Barcelona: Lynx Edicions. 1013 pp.
- del Hoyo, J.; Elliot, A. & Sargatal, J. (Eds). 1996. *Handbook of the birds of the world. Hoatzin to auks*. Volume 3. Barcelona: Lynx Edicions. 821 pp.
- Dickinson, E.C. (Ed.). 2003. *The Howard and Moore complete checklist of the birds of the world*. Revised and enlarged third edition. Princeton and Oxford: Princeton University Press. 1040 pp.
- Dickinson, E.C.; Bruce, M.D. & Dowsett, R.J. 2006. Vivarium naturae or the naturalist's miscellany (1789–1813) by George Shaw: an assessment of the dating of the parts and volumes. *Archives of Natural History* 33: 322–343.
- Dickinson, E.C. & Christidis, L. (eds). 2014. *The Howard & Moore complete checklist of the birds of the world*. Fourth edition. Vol. 2, Passerines. Eastbourne, UK: Aves Press. iii + 752 pp.
- Dickinson, E.C. & Remsen, J.V. (eds). 2013. *The Howard & Moore complete checklist of the birds of the world*. Fourth edition. Vol. 1, Non-passers. Eastbourne, UK: Aves Press. i + 461 pp.
- Dilley, B.J.; Davies, D.; Bond, A. L. & Ryan, P. 2015. Effects of mouse predation on burrowing petrel chicks at Gough Island. *Antarctic Science* 27: 543–553.
- Dorst, J. & Mougin, J.-L. 1979. Order Pelecaniformes. Pp. 155–193 in: Mayr, E. & Cottrell, G.W. (eds) *Check-list of birds of the world*. Second edition. Vol. 1. Cambridge, Massachusetts: Museum of Comparative Zoology.
- Dussex, N.; Sainsbury, J.; Moorhouse, R.; Jamieson, I.G. & Robertson, B.C. 2015. Evidence for Bergmann's Rule not allopatric subspeciation in the threatened kaka (*Nestor meridionalis*). *Journal of Heredity* 106: 679–691.
- Elliott, G.; Walker, K. & Buckingham, R. 1991. The Auckland Island rail. *Notornis* 38: 199–209.
- Elliott, G.P.; Walker, K.J.; Parker, G.C.; Rexer-Huber, K. & Miskelly, C.M. 2020. Subantarctic Adams Island and its birdlife. *Notornis* 67: 153–187.
- Ericson, P.G.P.; Anderson, C.L.; Britton, T.; Elzanowski, A.; Johansson, U.S.; Källersjö, M.; Ohlson, J.I.; Parsons, T.J.; Zuccon, D. & Mayr, G. 2006. Diversification of Neoaves: integration of molecular sequence data and fossils. *Biology Letters* 2: 543–547.
- Erritzøe, J.; Mann, C.F.; Brammer, F. & Fuller, R.A. 2012. *Cuckoos of the world* (Helm Identification Guides) London: Bloomsbury. 544 pp.
- Estandia, A.; Chesser, R.T.; James, H.F.; Levy, M.A.; Obiol, J.F.; Bretagnolle, V.; González-Solís, J. & Welch, A.J. 2021. Substitution rate variation in a robust procellariiform seabird phylogeny is not solely explained by body mass, flight efficiency, population size or life history traits. *BioRxiv* preprint doi: https://doi.org/10.1101/2021.07.27.453752. 18 pp.
- Falla, R.A. 1967. An Auckland Island rail. *Notornis* 14: 107–113.
- Falla, R.A. 1970. Grey ternlets in the Bay of Plenty. *Notornis* 17: 83–86.
- Falla, R.A. & Mougin, J.-L. 1979. Order Sphenisciformes. Pp. 121–134. In: Mayr, E. & Cottrell, G.W. (Eds). *Check-list of birds of the world*. Volume 1. Second edition. Cambridge, Massachusetts: Museum of Comparative Zoology. xviii + 547 pp.
- Falla, R.A.; Sibson, R.B. & Turbott, E.G. 1966. *A field guide to the birds of New Zealand and outlying islands*. London: Collins. 254 pp.
- Falla, R.A.; Sibson, R.B. & Turbott, E.G. 1981. *The new guide to the birds of New Zealand and outlying islands*. Auckland: Collins. 247 pp.
- Finsch, O. 1875. On two apparently new species of penguin from New Zealand. *Ibis* 5 (3rd series): 112–114.

- Fischer, J.H.; Debski, I.; Miskelly, C.M.; Bost, C.-A.; Fromant, A.; Tennyson, A.J.D.; Tessler, J.; Cole, R.; Hiscock, J.H.; Taylor, G.A. & Wittmer, H.U. 2018. Analyses of phenotypic differentiations among South Georgian diving petrel (*Pelecanoides georgicus*) populations reveal an undescribed and highly endangered species from New Zealand. *PLoS one* 13(6): e0197766.
- Fjeldså, J.; Christidis, L. & Ericson, P.G.P. (Eds). 2020. The largest avian radiation: the evolution of perching birds, or the order Passeriformes. Barcelona: Lynx Edicions. 445 pp.
- Fordyce, R.E. & Thomas, D.B. 2011. *Kaiika maxwelli*, a new early Eocene archaic penguin (Sphenisciformes, Aves) from Waihao Valley, South Canterbury, New Zealand. *New Zealand Journal of Geology and Geophysics* 54: 43–51.
- Foreman, G.A. 2000. In: Tennyson, A.J.D. & Lock, J.W. (Comps). Classified summarised notes, North Island, 1 July 1997 to 30 June 1998. *Notornis* 47: 192–214.
- Forster, J.R. 1781. Historia Aptenodytæ, generis avium orbi australi proprii. *Commentarii Phys. Societatis Regiae Scientiarum Göttingensis* 3: 121–148.
- Frugone, M.J.; López, M.E.; Segovia, N.I.; Cole, T.L.; Lowther, A.; Pistorius, P.; Dantas, G.P.M.; Petry, M.V.; Bonadonna, F.; Trathan, P.; Polanowski, A.; Wienecke, B.; Bi, K.; Wang-Claypool, C.Y.; Waters, J.M.; Bowie, R.C.K.; Poulin, E. & Viana, J.A. 2019. More than the eye can see: genomic insights into the drivers of genetic differentiation in royal/macaroni penguins across the Southern Ocean. *Molecular Phylogenetics and Evolution* 139: 106563.
- Furness, R.W. 1996. Family Stercorariidae (skuas). Pp. 556–571. In: del Hoyo, J.; Elliot, A. & Sargatal, J. (Eds). *Handbook of the birds of the world. Hoatzin to auks*. Volume 3. Barcelona: Lynx Edicions. 821 pp.
- Garcia-R, J. C.; Gibb, G.C. & Trewick, S.A. 2014. Deep global evolutionary radiation in birds: diversification and trait evolution in the cosmopolitan bird family Rallidae. *Molecular Phylogenetics and Evolution* 81: 96–108.
- Germano, J.; Barlow, S.; Castro, I.; Colbourne, R.; Cox, M.; Gillies, C.; Hackwell, K.; Harawira, J.; Impey, M.; Reuben, A.; Robertson, H.; Scrimgeour, J.; Sporle, W. & Yong, S. 2018. *Kiwi recovery plan 2018–2028 mahere whakaora kiwi 2018–2028*. Department of Conservation Threatened Species Recovery Plan 64. Wellington: Department of Conservation. 60 pp.
- Gibb, G.C.; England, R.; Hartig, G.; McLenachan, P.A.; Taylor Smith, B.L.; McComish, B.J.; Cooper, A. & Penny, D. 2015. New Zealand passerines help clarify the diversification of major songbird lineages during the Oligocene. *Genome Biology and Evolution* 7: 2983–2995.
- Gibson, R. & Baker, A. 2012. Multiple gene sequences resolve phylogenetic relationships in the shorebird suborder Scolopaci (Aves: Charadriiformes). *Molecular Phylogenetics and Evolution* 64: 66–72.
- Gill, B.J. 2003. Osteometry and systematics of the extinct New Zealand ravens (Aves: Corvidae: *Corvus*). *Journal of Systematic Palaeontology* 1: 43–58.
- Gill, F.; Donsker, D. & Rasmussen, P. (eds). 2021. *IOC World Bird List* (v11.1). doi: 10.14344/IOC.ML.11.1.
- Giovanardi, S.; Ksepka, D.T. & Thomas, D.B. 2021. A giant Oligocene fossil penguin from the North Island of New Zealand. *Journal of Vertebrate Paleontology* 41 (3): e1953047, doi: 10.1080/02724634.2021.1953047 (13 pp).
- Gochfeld, M. & Burger, J. 1996. Family Sternidae (terns). Pp. 624–667. In: del Hoyo, J.; Elliot, A. & Sargatal, J. (Eds). *Handbook of the birds of the world. Hoatzin to auks*. Volume 3. Barcelona: Lynx Edicions. 821 pp.
- Gonzales, J.; Düttmann, H. & Wink, M. 2009. Phylogenetic relationships based on two mitochondrial genes and hybridization patterns in Anatidae. *Journal of Zoology* 279: 310–318.
- Gray, G.R. 1845. Birds of New Zealand. Pp. 1–20 in Richardson, J. & Gray, J.E. (eds) *The zoology of the voyage of H.M.S. Erebus & Terror, under the command of Captain Sir James Clark Ross, During the Years 1839 to 1843*. Vol. 1. London: Janson.
- Gray, G.R. 1848. *List of the specimens of birds in the collection of the British Museum*. Second edition. London: Trustees of the British Museum (Natural History).
- Gray, G.R. 1871. *Hand-list of genera and species of birds distinguishing those contained in the British Museum*. Part 3. London: The Trustees. xii + 350 pp.
- Grealy, A.; Phillips, M.; Miller, G.; Gilbert, M.T.P.; Rouillard, J.-M.; Lambert, D.; Bunce, M. & Haile, J. 2017. Eggshell palaeogenomics: Palaeognath evolutionary history revealed through ancient nuclear and mitochondrial DNA from Madagascan elephant bird (*Aepyornis* sp.) eggshell. *Molecular Phylogenetics and Evolution* 109: 151–163.
- Greenway, J.C. 1958. *Extinct and vanishing birds of the world*. New York: American Committee for International Wild Life Protection Special Publication No. 13. 518 pp.
- Grieve, S. 1913. Notes on some rare New Zealand birds, and exhibition of skins, skeletons and eggs. *Proceedings of the Royal Physical Society Edinburgh* 19: 63–78.
- Grosser, S.; Burridge, C.P.; Peucker, A.J. & Waters, J.M. 2015. Coalescent modelling suggests recent secondary-contact of cryptic penguin species. *PLoS ONE*: DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0144966 . 17 pp.
- Grosser, S.; Rawlence, N.J.; Anderson, C.N.K.; Smith, I.W.G.; Scofield, R.P. & Waters, J.M. 2016. Invader or resident? Ancient-DNA reveals rapid species turnover in New Zealand little penguins. *Proceedings of the Royal Society B*. 283: DOI: 10.1098/rspb.2015.2879. 8 pp.
- Grosser, S.; Scofield, R.P. & Waters, J.M. 2017. Multivariate skeletal analyses support a taxonomic distinction between New Zealand and Australian *Eudyptula* penguins (Sphenisciformes: Spheniscidae). *Emu* 117: 276–283.
- Grosser, S.; Robertson, F.; Shepherd, L.D.; Tennyson, A.J.D.; Miskelly, C.M.; Taylor, G.A. & Robertson, B.C. 2021. Phylogenetic affinities of the Whenua Hou diving petrel: implications for conservation. *Emu - Austral Ornithology* 121: 102–112.
- Gunby, E. 2018. First record of Cox's sandpiper (*Calidris x paramelanotos*) for New Zealand. *Notornis* 65: 51–53.
- Hackett, S.J.; Kimball, R.T.; Reddy, S.; Bowie, R.C.K.; Braun, E.L.; Braun, M.J.; Chojnowski, J.L.; Cox, W.A.; Han, K.; Harshman, J.; Huddleston, C.J.; Marks, B.D.; Miglia, K.J.; Moore, W.S.; Sheldon, F.H.; Steadman, D.W.; Witt, C.C. & Yuri, T. 2008. A phylogenomic study of birds reveals their evolutionary history. *Science* 320: 1760.
- Haddrath, O. & Baker, A.J. 2001. Complete mitochondrial DNA genome sequences of extinct birds: ratite phylogenetics and the vicariance biogeography hypothesis. *Proceedings of the Royal Society London series B* 268: 939–945.
- Handbook of the Birds of the World and BirdLife International (2020). *Handbook of the birds of the world and BirdLife International digital checklist of the birds of the world*. Version 5. Available at http://datazone.birdlife.org/userfiles/file/Species/Taxonomy/HBW-BirdLife_Checklist_v5_Dec20.zip.

- Harrison, K.C. & Mulligan, S. 1987. Painted snipe (*Rostratula benghalensis*) at Lake Ellesmere. *Notornis* 34: 78–79.
- Heather, B.D. & Robertson, H.A. 1996. *The field guide to the birds of New Zealand*. Auckland: Viking. 432 pp.
- Hector, J. 1872. On the remains of a gigantic penguin (*Palaeudyptes antarcticus*, Huxley) from the Tertiary rocks on the west coast of Nelson. *Transactions and Proceedings of the New Zealand Institute* 4: 341–346.
- Hermes, N.; Evans, O. & Evans, B. 1986. Norfolk Island birds: a review 1985. *Notornis* 33: 141–149.
- Higgins, P.J. & Davies, S.J.F. (Eds). 1996. *Handbook of Australian, New Zealand & Antarctic birds. Snipe to pigeons*. Volume 3. Melbourne: Oxford University Press. 1028 pp.
- Higgins, P.J.; Peter, J.M. & Cowling, S.J. (Eds). 2006. *Handbook of Australian, New Zealand & Antarctic birds. Boatbill to starlings*. Volume 7 (A and B). Melbourne: Oxford University Press. viii + 1984 pp.
- Hogg, M.J. & Brown, B. 1966. American whimbrel (Hudsonian curlew) in Firth of Thames. *Notornis* 13: 67–68.
- Holdaway, R.N.; Worthy, T.H. & Tennyson, A.J.D. 2001. A working list of breeding bird species of the New Zealand region at first human contact. *New Zealand Journal of Zoology* 28: 119–187.
- Holland, B.R.; Spencer, H.G.; Worthy, T.H. & Kennedy, M. 2010. Identifying cliques of convergent characters: concerted evolution in the cormorants and shags. *Systematic Biology* 59: 433–445.
- Howell, S.N.G. 2012. *Petrels, albatrosses & storm-petrels of North America; a photographic guide*. Princeton and Oxford: Princeton University Press. 483 pp.
- Howell, S.N.G. & Zufelt, K. 2019. *Oceanic birds of the world; a photo guide*. Princeton and Oxford: Princeton University Press. 361 pp.
- Huxley, T. H. 1859. On a fossil bird and a fossil cetacean from New Zealand. *Quarterly Journal of the Geological Society of London* 15: 670–677.
- ICZN [International Commission on Zoological Nomenclature]. 1916. Opinions rendered by the International Commission on Zoological Nomenclature: Opinion 67. One hundred and two bird names placed in the official list of generic names. *Smithsonian Institution Publication, Washington* 2409: 177–182.
- ICZN [International Commission on Zoological Nomenclature]. 1955. Direction 26. Determination of the gender to be attributed to the names of ninety-eight genera of birds placed on the *Official List of Generic Names in Zoology* in the period up to the end of 1936. *Opinions and Declarations Rendered by the International Commission of Zoological Nomenclature I*(C.17): 259–272.
- ICZN [International Commission on Zoological Nomenclature]. 1999. *International code of zoological nomenclature*. Fourth edition. London: The International Trust for Zoological Nomenclature. xxx + 306 pp.
- ICZN [International Commission on Zoological Nomenclature]. 2008. Opinion 2215 (Case 3380). *Streptopelia risoria* (Linnaeus, 1758) (Aves, Columbidae): priority maintained. *Bulletin of Zoological Nomenclature* 65(4): 234–235.
- ICZN [International Commission on Zoological Nomenclature]. 2011. Opinion 2284. *Anthochaera* Vigors & Horsfield, 1827 and *Philesturnus* Geoffroy Saint-Hilaire, 1832 (Aves): usage conserved by suppression of the generic name *Creadion* Vieillot, 1816. *Bulletin of Zoological Nomenclature* 68(3): 234–235.
- Imber, M.J. & Tennyson, A.J.D. 2001. A new petrel species (Procellariidae) from the south-west Pacific. *Emu* 101: 123–127.
- Imber, M.J.; West, J.A. & Cooper, W.J. 2003. Cook's petrel (*Pterodroma cookii*): historic distribution, breeding biology and effects of predators. *Notornis* 50: 221–230.
- Jackson, D.G.; Emslie, S.D. & van Tuinen, M. 2012. Genome skimming identifies polymorphism in tern populations and species, *BMC Research Notes* 5: 94 (11 pp.).
- Jarvis, E.D.; Mirarab, S.; Aberer, A.J.; Li, B.; Houde, P.; Li, C. Ho, S.Y.W.; Faircloth, B.C.; Nabholz, B.; Howard, J.T.; Suh, A.; Weber, C.C.; da Fonseca, R.R.; Li, J.; Zhang, F.; Li, H.; Zhou, L.; Narula, N.; Liu, L.; Ganapathy, G.; Boussau, B.; Bayzid, M.S.; Zavidovych, V.; Subramanian, S.; Gabaldón, T.; Capella-Gutiérrez, S.; Huerta-Cepas, J.; Rekepalli, B.; Munch, K.; Schierup, M.; Lindow, B.; Warren, W.C.; Ray, D.; Green, R.E.; Bruford, M.W.; Zhan, X.; Dixon, A.; Li, S.; Li, N.; Huang, Y.; Derryberry, E.P.; Bertelsen, M.F.; Sheldon, F.H.; Brumfield, R.T.; Mello, C.V.; Lovell, P.V.; Wirthlin, M.; Cruz Schneider, M.P.; Prosdocimi, F.; Samaniego, J.A.; Velazquez, A.M.V.; Alfaro-Núñez, A.; Campos, P.F.; Petersen, B.; Sicheritz-Ponten, T.; Pas, A.; Bailey, T.; Scofield, P.; Bunce, M.; Lambert, D.M.; Zhou, Q.; Perelman, P.; Driskell, A.; Shapiro, B.; Xiong, Z.; Zeng, Y.; Liu, S.; Li, Z.; Liu, B.; Wu, K.; Xiao, J.; Yinqi, X.; Zheng, Q.; Zhang, Y.; Yang, H.; Wang, J.; Smeds, L.; Rheindt, F.E.; Braun, M.; Fjeldsa, J.; Orlando, L.; Berker, F.K.; Jönsson, K.A.; Johnson, W.; Koepfli, K.-P.; O'Brien, S.; Haussler, D.; Ryder, O.A.; Rahbek, C.; Willerslev, E.; Graves, G.R.; Glenn, T.C.; McCormack, J.; Burt, D.; Ellegren, H.; Alström, P.; Edwards, S.V.; Stamatakis, A.; Mindell, D.P.; Cracraft, J.; Braun, E.L.; Warnow, T.; Jun, W.; Gilbert, M.T.P. & Zhang, G. 2014. Whole-genome analyses resolve early branches in the tree of life of modern birds. *Science* 346: 1320–1331. <https://doi.org/10.1126/science.1253451>
- Jiguet, F. 2002. Taxonomy of the kelp gull *Larus dominicanus* Lichtenstein inferred from biometrics and wing plumage pattern, including two previously undescribed subspecies. *Bulletin of the British Ornithologists' Club* 122: 50–71.
- Jiguet, F.; Capainolo, P. & Tennyson, A. 2012. Taxonomy of the kelp gull *Larus dominicanus* Lichtenstein revisited with sex-separated analyses of biometrics and wing tip patterns. *Zoological Studies* 51: 881–892.
- Johansson, U.S.; Pasquet, E. & Irestedt, M. 2011. The New Zealand thrush: an extinct oriole. *PLoS ONE* 6: e24317. 6 pp.
- Jones, C.W.; Risi, M.M.; Osborne, A.M.; Ryan, P.G. & Oppel, S. 2021. Mouse eradication is required to prevent local extinction of an endangered seabird on an oceanic island. *Animal Conservation* 24: 637–645.
- Joseph, L.; Toon, A.; Schirtzinger, E.E.; Wright, T.F. & Schodde, R. 2012. A revised nomenclature and classification for family-group taxa of parrots (Psittaciformes). *Zootaxa* 3205: 26–40.
- Kakishima, S. & Morimoto, T. 2015. First record of dusky woodswallow (*Artamus cyanopterus*) in New Zealand. *Notornis* 62: 231–232.
- Kearns, A.M.; Joseph, L. & Cook, L.G. 2013. A multilocus coalescent analysis of the speciation history of the Australo-Papuan butcherbirds and their allies. *Molecular Phylogenetics and Evolution* 66: 941–952.
- Kearns, A.M.; Joseph, L.; Thierry, A.; Malloy, J.F.; Cortes-Rodriguez, M.N. & Omland, K.E. 2019. Diversification of *Petroica* robins across the Australo-Pacific region: first insights into the phylogenetic affinities of New Guinea's highland robin species. Special issue: Ornithology of New Guinea and the Indo-Pacific Islands. *Emu-Austral Ornithology* 119: 205–217.

- Kearns, A.M.; Malloy, J.F.; Gobbert, M.; Thierry, A.; Joseph, L.; Driskell, A. & Omland, K.E. 2019. Nuclear introns help unravel the diversification history of the Australo-Pacific *Petroica* robins. *Molecular Phylogenetics and Evolution* 131: 48–54.
- Kennedy, M. & Page, R.D.M. 2002. Seabird supertrees: combining partial estimates of procellariiform phylogeny. *Auk* 119: 88–108.
- Kennedy, M. & Spencer, H.G. 2014. Classification of the cormorants of the world. *Molecular Phylogenetics and Evolution* 79: 249–257.
- Kimball, R.T.; St. Mary, C.M. & Braun, E.L. 2011. A macroevolutionary perspective on multiple sexual traits in the Phasianidae (Galliformes). *International Journal of Evolutionary Biology* 2011, Article ID 423938, 16 pp. doi:10.4061/2011/423938.
- Ksepka, D.T. 2009. Broken gears in the avian molecular clock: new phylogenetic analyses support stem galliform status for *Gallinuloides wyomingensis* and rallid affinities for *Amitabha urbsinterdictensis*. *Cladistics* 25: 173–197.
- Ksepka, D.T.; Bertelli, S. & Giannini, N.P. 2006. The phylogeny of the living and fossil Sphenisciformes (penguins). *Cladistics* 22: 412–441.
- Ksepka, D.T.; Fordyce, R.E.; Ando, T. & Jones, C.M. 2012. New fossil penguins (Aves: Sphenisciformes) from the Oligocene of New Zealand reveal the skeletal plan of stem penguins. *Journal of Vertebrate Paleontology* 32: 235–254.
- Kuhl, H.; Frankl-Vilches, C.; Bakker, A.; Mayr, G.; Nikolaus, G.; Boerno, S.T.; Klages, S.; Timmermann, B. & Gahr, M. 2021. An unbiased molecular approach using 3'UTRs resolves the avian family-level tree of life. *Molecular Biology and Evolution* 38: 108–127. https://doi.org/10.1093/molbev/msaa191.
- Lane, B.A. & Rogers, D.I. 2000. The Australian painted snipe, *Rostratula (benghalensis) australis*: an endangered species? *Stilt* 36: 26–34.
- Lanfear, R. & Bromham, L. 2011. Estimating phylogenies for species assemblages: a complete phylogeny for the past and present native birds of New Zealand. *Molecular Phylogenetics & Evolution* 61: 958–963. doi:10.1016/j.ympev.2011.07.018.
- Latham, P.C.M. 2003. An update on the grey ternlet (*Procelsterna cerulea albivitta*) in the Bay of Plenty. *Notornis* 50: 118–121.
- Lee, M. & Bruce, M.D. 2019. The ‘French kiwi’ *Dromiceius novaezelandiae* first recorded and named by R.P. Lesson in the Bay of Islands, April 1824. *Notornis* 66: 168–173.
- Livezey, B.C. 1998. A phylogenetic analysis of the Gruiformes (Aves) based on morphological characters, with an emphasis on the rails (Rallidae). *Philosophical Transactions: Biological Sciences (B)* 353: 2077–2151.
- Livezey, B.C. & Zusi, R.L. 2007. Higher-order phylogeny of modern birds (Theropoda, Aves: Neornithes) based on comparative anatomy. II. Analysis and discussion. *Zoological Journal of the Linnean Society* 149: 1–95.
- Lowe, K.W. & Richards, G.C. 1991. Morphological variation in the sacred ibis *Threskiornis aethiopicus* superspecies complex. *Emu* 91: 41–45.
- Marchant, S. & Higgins, P.J. (Eds). 1990. *Handbook of Australian, New Zealand & Antarctic birds*. Volume 1 (A and B). Ratites to ducks. Melbourne: Oxford University Press. 1400 pp.
- Marchant, S. & Higgins, P.J. (Eds). 1993. *Handbook of Australian, New Zealand & Antarctic birds*. Volume 2. Raptors to Lapwings. Melbourne, Oxford University Press.
- Martínez-Gómez, J.E.; Noemi, M.-F.; Sehgal, R.N.M. & Escalante, P. 2015. Phylogenetic placement of the critically endangered Townsend’s shearwater (*Puffinus auricularis auricularis*): evidence for its conspecific status with Newell’s shearwater (*Puffinus a. newelli*) and a mismatch between genetic and phenotypic differentiation. *Journal of Ornithology* 156: 1025–1034.
- Mather, E.K.; Tennyson, A.J.D.; Scofield, R.P.; De Pietri, V.L.; Hand, S.J.; Archer, M.; Handley, W.D. & Worthy, T.H. 2018. Flightless rails (Aves: Rallidae) from the early Miocene St Bathans Fauna, Otago, New Zealand. *Journal of Systematic Palaeontology* 17: 423–449.
- Mathews, G.M. 1935. Remarks on *Apteryx australis* and *Stictapteryx owenii* with necessary changes of nomenclature. *Bulletin of the British Ornithologists' Club* 55: 179–180.
- Mathews, G.M. 1937. Some changes in the names of New Zealand birds. *Emu* 36: 221–223.
- Mathews, G.M. & Iredale, T. 1913. A reference list of the birds of New Zealand. Part 1. *Ibis* 2 (10th series): 201–263.
- Mayr, G.; De Pietri, V.L.; Love, L.; Mannering, A.A. & Scofield, R.P. 2018. A well-preserved new mid-Paleocene penguin (Aves, Sphenisciformes) from the Waipara Greensand in New Zealand. *Journal of Vertebrate Paleontology* 37: 6, e1398169, DOI: 10.1080/02724634.2017.1398169.
- Mayr, G.; De Pietri, V.L.; Love, L.; Mannering, A. & Scofield, R.P. 2019. Leg bones of a new penguin species from the Waipara Greensand add to the diversity of very large Sphenisciformes in the Paleocene of New Zealand. *Alcheringa* 44: 194–201.
- Mayr, G.; De Pietri, V.L.; Love, L.; Mannering, A. & Scofield, R.P. 2021. Oldest, smallest and phylogenetically most basal pelagornithid, from the early Paleocene of New Zealand, sheds light on the evolutionary history of the largest flying birds. *Papers in Palaeontology* 7: 217–233.
- Mayr, G. & Rubilar-Rogers, D. 2010. Osteology of a new giant bony-toothed bird from the Miocene of Chile, with a revision of the taxonomy of Neogene Pelagornithidae. *Journal of Vertebrate Paleontology* 30: 1327–1330.
- Mayr, G. & Scofield, R.P. 2014. First diagnosable non-sphenisciform bird from the early Paleocene of New Zealand. *Journal of the Royal Society of New Zealand* 44: 48–56.
- Mayr, G. & Scofield, R.P. 2015. New avian remains from the early Paleocene of New Zealand: the first early Cenozoic Phaethontiformes (tropicbirds) from the Southern Hemisphere. *Journal of Vertebrate Paleontology* e1031343 (5 p.).
- Mayr, G.; Scofield, R.P.; De Pietri, V.L. & Tennyson, A.J.D. 2017. A Paleocene penguin from New Zealand substantiates multiple origins of gigantism in fossil Sphenisciformes. *Nature Communications* 8: 1927 (https://doi.org/10.1038/s41467-017-01959-6). 5 pp.
- Mayr, G. & Smith, T. 2012. Phylogenetic affinities and taxonomy of the Oligocene Diomedoididae, and the basal divergences amongst extant procellariiform birds. *Zoological Journal of the Linnean Society* 166: 854–875.
- Mayr, G. & Tennyson, A.J.D. 2019. A small, narrow-beaked albatross from the Pliocene of New Zealand demonstrates a higher past diversity in the feeding ecology of the Diomedeidae. *Ibis* 162: 723–734.
- Medway, D.G. 1976. Extant types of New Zealand birds from Cook’s voyages. Part 2: type specimens. *Notornis* 23: 120–137.
- Melville, D.S.; Riegen, A.C.; Schuckard, R. & Habraken, A.M. 2020. Movements of New Zealand ruddy turnstones (*Arenaria interpres*). *Notornis* 67: 659–672.

- Millener, P.R. 1991. The Quaternary avifauna of New Zealand. Pp. 1317–1344. In: Vickers-Rich, P.; Monaghan, J.M.; Baird, R.F. & Rich, T.H. (Eds). *Vertebrate palaeontology of Australasia*. Melbourne: Pioneer Design Studio in co-operation with the Monash University Publications Committee. 1437 pp.
- Millener, P.R. 1999. The history of the Chatham Islands' bird fauna of the last 7000 years – a chronicle of change and extinction. Pp. 85–109. In: Olson, S.L. (Ed.). Avian paleontology at the close of the 20th century. Proceedings of the 4th International meeting of the Society of Avian Paleontology and Evolution. Washington, D.C., 4–7 June 1996. *Smithsonian Contributions to Ornithology* 89: i–viii + 1–344.
- Miller, H.C. & Lambert, D.M. 2006. A molecular phylogeny of New Zealand's *Petroica* (Aves: Petroicidae) species based on mitochondrial DNA sequences. *Molecular Phylogenetics and Evolution* 40: 844–855.
- Miskelly, C.M. 2012. Bird names commemorating Edgar Stead. *Notornis* 59: 7–14.
- Miskelly, C.M. 2018. Rose-ringed parakeet. In Miskelly, C.M. (Ed.) *New Zealand birds online*. www.nzbirdsonline.org.nz [viewed 3 Mar. 2022].
- Miskelly, C.M. 2020. First record of rose-crowned fruit-dove (*Ptilinopus regina*) from New Zealand. *Notornis* 67: 564–567.
- Miskelly, C.M. & Baker, A.J. 2010a. Description of a new subspecies of *Coenocorypha* snipe from subantarctic Campbell Island, New Zealand. *Notornis* 56: 113–123.
- Miskelly, C.M. & Baker, A.J. 2010b. Corrected publication date for *Coenocorypha aucklandica perseverance*. *Notornis* 57: 56.
- Miskelly, C.M. & Cooper, J.H. 2020. Macquarie Island shags (*Leucocarbo purpurascens*) at the Auckland Islands – an addition to the New Zealand list. *Notornis* 67: 419–425.
- Miskelly, C.M.; Crossland, A.C.; Sagar, P.M.; Saville, I.; Tennyson, A.J.D. & Bell, E.A. 2013. Vagrant and extra-limital bird records accepted by the OSNZ Records Appraisal Committee 2011–2012. *Notornis* 60: 296–306.
- Miskelly, C.M.; Crossland, A.C.; Sagar, P.M.; Saville, I.; Tennyson, A.J.D. & Bell, E.A. 2015. Vagrant and extra-limital bird records accepted by the Birds New Zealand Records Appraisal Committee 2013–2014. *Notornis* 62: 85–95.
- Miskelly, C.M.; Crossland, A.C.; Sagar, P.M.; Saville, I.; Tennyson, A.J.D. & Bell, E.A. 2017. Vagrant and extra-limital bird records accepted by the Birds New Zealand Records Appraisal Committee 2015–2016. *Notornis* 64: 57–67.
- Miskelly, C.M.; Crossland, A.C.; Saville, I.; Southey, I.; Tennyson, A.J.D. & Bell, E.A. 2019. Vagrant and extra-limital bird records accepted by the Birds New Zealand Records Appraisal Committee 2017–2018. *Notornis* 64: 150–163.
- Miskelly, C.M.; Crossland, A.C.; Saville, I.; Southey, I.; Tennyson, A.J.D. & Bell, E.A. 2021. Vagrant and extra-limital bird records accepted by the Birds New Zealand Records Appraisal Committee 2019–2020. *Notornis* 66: 253–265.
- Miskelly, C.M.; Elliott, G.P.; Parker, G.C.; Rexer-Huber, K.; Russ, R.B.; Taylor, R.H.; Tennyson, A.J.D. & Walker, K.J. 2020. Birds of the Auckland Islands, New Zealand subantarctic. *Notornis* 67: 59–151.
- Miskelly, C.M. & Powlesland, R.G. 2013. Conservation translocations of New Zealand birds, 1863–2012. *Notornis* 60: 3–28.
- Miskelly, C.M.; Scofield, R.P.; Sagar, P.M.; Tennyson, A.J.D.; Bell, B.D. & Bell, E.A. 2011. Vagrant and extra-limital bird records accepted by the OSNZ Records Appraisal Committee 2008–2010. *Notornis* 58: 64–70.
- Miskelly, C.M. & Taylor, R.H. 2020. Ornithological discovery, exploration, and research on the Auckland Islands, New Zealand subantarctic. *Notornis* 67: 11–58.
- Mitchell, K.J.; Llamas, B.; Soubrier, J.; Rawlence, N.J.; Worthy, T.H.; Wood, J.; Lee, M.S.Y. & Cooper, A. 2014. Ancient DNA reveals elephant birds and kiwi are sister taxa and clarifies ratite bird evolution. *Science* 344: 898–900.
- Mitchell, K.J.; Wood, J.R.; Llamas, B.; McLenachan, P.A.; Kardailsky, O.; Scofield, R.P.; Worthy, T.H. & Cooper, A. 2016. Ancient mitochondrial genomes clarify the evolutionary history of New Zealand's enigmatic acantisittid wrens. *Molecular Phylogenetics and Evolution* 102: 295–304.
- Mitchell, K.J.; Wood, J.R.; Scofield, R.P.; Llamas, B. & Cooper, A. 2014. Ancient mitochondrial genome reveals unsuspected taxonomic affinity of the extinct Chatham duck (*Pachynas chathamica*) and resolves divergence times for New Zealand and sub-Antarctic brown teals. *Molecular Phylogenetics and Evolution* 70: 420–428.
- Moyle, R.G. 2006. A molecular phylogeny of kingfishers (Alcedinidae) with insights into early biogeographic history. *Auk* 123: 487–499.
- Nowak, J.E.; Sweet, A.D.; Weckstein, J.D. & Johnson, K.P. 2019. A molecular phylogenetic analysis of the genera of fruit doves and their allies using dense taxonomic sampling. *Illinois Natural History Survey Bulletin* 42: 2019001.
- O'Brien, M.; Bird, J.P.; O'Connor, E.; Qalo, P.; Fraser, M. & Watling, D. 2016. New distribution records of collared petrel (*Pterodroma brevipes*) in Fiji and development of a rapid assessment monitoring method. *Notornis* 63: 18–25.
- Ödeen, A.; Håstad, O. & Alström, P. 2010. Evolution of ultraviolet vision in shorebirds (Charadriiformes). *Biology Letters* 6: 370–374.
- Ogilvie-Grant, W.R. 1898. Steganopodes (cormorants, gannets, frigate-birds, tropic-birds, and pelicans), Pygopodes (divers and grebes), Alcae (auks), and Impennes (penguins). Pp. 329–657 in Bowdler Sharpe, R. & Ogilvie-Grant, W.R. Catalogue of the Plataleae, Herodiones, Steganopodes, Pygopodes, Alcae, and Impennes in the Collection of the British Museum. *Catalogue of the birds in the British Museum*, Vol. 26. London: Trustees of the British Museum.
- Ogilvie-Grant, W.R. 1905. On the birds procured by the Earl of Ranfurly in New Zealand and the adjacent islands. *Ibis* 5 (8th series): 543–602.
- Oliver, W.R.B. 1930. *New Zealand Birds*. Wellington: Fine Arts (New Zealand) Ltd. viii + 541 pp.
- Oliver, W.R.B. 1955. *New Zealand birds*. 2nd edition. Wellington: A.H. & A.W. Reed. 661 pp.
- Olsen, P.D. 1999. Laughing owl (*Sceloglaux albifacies*). In: del Hoyo, J.; Elliott, A.; Sargatal, J.; Christie, D.A.; de Juana, E. (eds) *Handbook of the birds of the world alive*. Lynx Edicions: Barcelona. <http://www.hbw.com/node/200871>
- Olson, S.L. 1975. A review of the extinct rails of the New Zealand region (Aves: Rallidae). *Records of the National Museum of New Zealand* 1: 63–79.
- Olson, S.L. 1985. The fossil record of birds. Pp. 79–252. In: Farner, D.S.; King, J.R. & Parkes, K.C. (Eds). *Avian biology*. Volume 8. New York: Academic Press. xxiv + 256 pp.
- Onley, D.J. & Scofield, P. 2007. *Albatrosses, petrels & shearwaters of the world*. Princeton: Princeton University Press. 240 pp.
- Palma, R.L.; Worthy, T.H. & Tennyson, A.J.D. 2003. Resolution of the status of the taxon *Apteryx maxima*. *Tuhinga: Records of the Museum of New Zealand Te Papa Tongarewa* 14: 1–9.

- Parker, S.A. 1982. A new sandpiper of the genus *Calidris*. *South Australian Naturalist* 56: 63.
- Parrish, G.R. & Lock, W.J. (Comps). 1995. Classified summarised notes, North Island 1 July 1993 to 30 June 1994. *Notornis* 42: 145–173.
- Payne, R.B. 2005. *The cuckoos*. Oxford, UK: Oxford University Press. 618 pp + 20 plates.
- Penhallurick, J. & Wink, M. 2004. Analysis of the taxonomy and nomenclature of the Procellariiformes based on complete nucleotide sequences of the mitochondrial cytochrome b gene. *Emu* 104: 125–147.
- Pereira, S.L. & Baker, A.J. 2005. Multiple gene evidence for parallel evolution and retention of ancestral morphological states in the shanks (Charadriiformes: Scolopacidae). *Condor* 107: 514–526.
- Pereira, S.L.; Johnson, K.P.; Clayton, D.H. & Baker, A.J. 2007. Mitochondrial and nuclear DNA sequences support a Cretaceous origin of Columbiformes and a dispersal-driven radiation in the Paleogene. *Systematic Biology* 56: 656–672.
- Pertierra, L.R.; Segovia, N.I.; Noll, D.; Martinez, P.A.; Pliscoff, P.; Barbosa, A.; Aragón, P.; Rey, A.R.; Pistorius, P.; Trathan, P.; Polanowski, A.; Bonadonna, F.; Le Bohec, C.; Bi, K.; Wang-Claypool, C.Y.; González-Acuña, D.; Dantas, G.P.M.; Bowie, R.C.K.; Poulin, E. & Vianna, J.A. 2020. Cryptic speciation in gentoo penguins is driven by geographic isolation and regional marine conditions: unforeseen vulnerabilities to global change. *Diversity and Distributions* 26: 958–975.
- Peucker, A.J.; Dann, P. & Burridge, C.P. 2009. Range-wide phylogeography of the little penguin (*Eudyptula minor*): evidence of long-distance dispersal. *Auk* 126: 397–408.
- Phillips, M.J.; Gibb, G.C.; Crimp, E.A. & Penny, D. 2010. Tinamous and moa flock together: mitochondrial genome sequence analysis reveals independent loss of flight among ratites. *Systematic Biology* 59: 90–107.
- Pons, J.-M.; Hassaini, A. & Crochet, P.-A. 2005. Phylogenetic relationships within the Laridae (Charadriiformes: Aves) inferred from mitochondrial markers. *Molecular Phylogenetics and Evolution* 37: 686–699.
- Portelli, D.J. 2016. Plumage variation in Gould's petrel (*Pterodroma leucoptera*): an evaluation of the taxonomic validity of *P. l. caledonica* (Imber & Jenkins 1981) [sic]. *Notornis* 63: 130–141.
- Potts, T.H. 1872. Notes and descriptions of some birds lately added to the museum, Canterbury, New Zealand. *Ibis* 2 (3rd series): 35–39.
- Pratt, H.D. 2011. Observations on species limits in the great egret (*Ardea alba*) complex. *Journal of Heron Biology and Conservation* 1: 5 (5 pp).
- Prum, R.O.; Berv, J.S.; Dornburg, A.; Field, D.J.; Townsend, J.P.; Lemmon, E.M. & Lemmon, A.R. 2015. A comprehensive phylogeny of birds (Aves) using targeted next-generation DNA sequencing. *Nature* 526: 569–573. <https://doi.org/10.1038/nature15697>
- Pyle, P.; Welch, A.J. & Fleischer, R.C. 2011. A new species of shearwater (*Puffinus*) recorded from Midway Atoll, northwestern Hawaiian Islands. *Condor* 113: 518–527.
- Rawlence, N.J.; Kardamaki, A.; Easton, L.J.; Tennyson, A.J.D.; Scofield, R.P. & Waters, J.M. 2017. Ancient DNA and morphometric analysis reveal extinction and replacement of New Zealand's unique black swans. *Proceedings of the Royal Society B: Biological Sciences*, 284(1859): 20170876. 7 pp.
- Rawlence, N.J.; Rayner, M.J.; Lovegrove, T.G.; Stoddart, D.; Vermeulen, M.; Easton, L.J.; Tennyson, A.J.D.; Scofield, R.P.; Kennedy, M.; Spencer, H. & Waters, J.M. 2019. Archival DNA reveals cryptic biodiversity within the spotted shag (*Phalacrocorax punctatus*) from New Zealand. *The Condor Ornithological Applications* 121(3): 1–16. DOI: 10.1093/condor/duz029
- Rawlence, N.J.; Salis, A.T.; Spencer, H.G.; Waters, J.M.; Scarsbrook, L.; Mitchell, K.J.; Phillips, R.A.; Calderón, L.; Cook, T.R.; Bost, C.-A.; Dutoit, L.; King, T.M.; Masello, J.F.; Nupen, L.J.; Quillfeldt, P.; Ratcliffe, N.; Ryan, P.G.; Till, C.E. & Kennedy, M. 2022. Rapid radiation of Southern Ocean shags in response to receding sea ice. *Journal of Biogeography* 00: 1–12. <https://doi.org/10.1111/jbi.14360> 12 pp.
- Rawlence, N.J.; Scofield, R.P.; Spencer, H.G.; Lalas, C.; Easton, L.J.; Tennyson, A.J.D.; Adams, M.; Pasquet, E.; Fraser, C.; Waters, J.M. & Kennedy, M. 2016. Genetic and morphological evidence for two species of *Leucocarbo* shag (Aves, Pelecaniformes, Phalacrocoracidae) from southern South Island of New Zealand. *Zoological Journal of the Linnean Society* 177: 676–694.
- Rawlence, N.J.; Till, C.E.; Easton, L.J.; Spencer, H.G.; Schuckard, R.; Melville, D.S.; Scofield, R.P.; Tennyson, A.J.D.; Rayner, M.J.; Waters, J.M. & Kennedy, M. 2017. Speciation, range contraction and extinction in the endemic New Zealand king shag complex. *Molecular Phylogenetics and Evolution* 115: 197–209.
- Rayner, M.J.; Hauber, M.E. & Clout, M.N. 2007. Breeding habitat of the Cook's petrel (*Pterodroma cookii*) on Little Barrier Island (Hauturu): implications for the conservation of a New Zealand endemic. *Emu* 107: 59–68.
- Rayner, M.J.; Hauber, M.E.; Clout, M.N.; Seldon, D.S.; Van Dijken, S.; Bury, S. & Phillips, R.A. 2008. Foraging ecology of the Cook's petrel *Pterodroma cookii* during the austral breeding season: a comparison of its two populations. *Marine Ecology Progress Series* 370: 271–284.
- Rayner, M.J.; Hauber, M.E.; Steeves, T.E.; Lawrence, H.A.; Thompson, D.R.; Sagar, P.M.; Bury, S.J.; Landers, T.J.; Phillips, R.A.; Ranjard, L. & Shaffer, S.A. 2011. Contemporary and historic separation of transequatorial migration between genetically distinct seabird populations. *Nature Communications* 2 (332): 1–7.
- Rayner, M.J.; Parker, K.A. & Imber, M.J. 2008. Population census of Cook's petrel *Pterodroma cookii* breeding on Codfish Island (New Zealand) and the global conservation status of the species. *Bird Conservation International*. 18: 211–218.
- Rayner, M.J.; van Loenen, A.L.; Shepherd, L.D.; Cubrinovska, I.; Scofield, R.P.; Tennyson, A.J.D.; Bunce, M. & Steeves, T.E. 2021. Comprehensive evidence for subspecies designations in Cook's petrel *Pterodroma cookii* with implications for conservation management. *Bird Conservation International* 13: 1–13 (doi: 10.1017/S0959270920000350).
- Reddy, S.; Kimball, R.T.; Pandey, A.; Hosner, P.A.; Braun, M.J.; Hackett, S.J.; Han, K.; Harshman, J.; Huddleston, C.J.; Kingston, S.; Marks, B.D.; Miglia, K.J.; Moore, W.S.; Sheldon, F.H.; Steadman, D.W.; Witt, C.C.; Yuri, T. & Braun, E.J. 2017. Why do phylogenomic data sets yield conflicting trees? Data type influences the avian tree of life more than taxon sampling. *Systematic Biology* 66: 857–879.
- Reichenbach, H.G.L. 1849–53. *Avium systema naturale: das natürliche System der Vögel mit hundert Tafeln grosstentheils Original-Abbildungen der bis jetzt entdeckten fast zwölftausend typischen Formen. Vorläufer einer Iconographie der Arten der Vögel aller Welttheile, welche, nachdem bereits fast dreitausend Abbildungen erscheinen sind, ununterbrochen fortgesetzt wird*. Dresden & Leipzig: Expedition der vollständigsten Naturgeschichte. 100 pp., 100 pls.
- Riegen, A.C. & Sagar, P.M. 2020. Distribution and numbers of waders in New Zealand, 2005–2019. *Notornis* 67: 591–634.

- Robertson, B.C.; Stephenson, B.M. & Goldstein, S.J. 2011. When discovery is not enough: taxonomic uncertainty hinders conservation of a critically endangered bird. *Molecular Phylogenetics and Evolution* 63: 949–952.
- Robertson, H.A. 2017. Okarito brown kiwi. In Miskelly, C.M. (Ed.) *New Zealand birds online*. www.nzbirdsonline.org.nz [viewed 23 Jun. 2021].
- Robson, C. 2008. *Field guide to the birds of Thailand and Southeast Asia*. London: New Holland. 544 pp.
- Rogers, D.I.; Yang, H.-Y.; Hassell, C.J.; Boyle, A.N.; Rogers, K.G.; Chen, B.; Zhang, Z.-W. & Piersma, T. 2010. Red knots (*Calidris canutus piersmai* and *C. c. rogersi*) depend on a small threatened staging area in Bohai Bay, China. *Emu* 110: 307–315.
- Sainsbury, J.P.; Greene, T.C.; Moorhouse, R.J.; Daugherty, C.H. & Chambers, C.K. 2006. Microsatellite analysis reveals substantial levels of genetic variation but low levels of genetic divergence among isolated populations of kaka (*Nestor meridionalis*). *Emu* 106: 329–338.
- Salomon, M. & Voisin, J.-F. 2010. Ecogeographical variation in the southern giant petrel (*Macronectes giganteus*). *Canadian Journal of Zoology* 88: 195–203.
- Sangster, G.; Collinson, J.M.; Crochet, P.-A.; Knox, A.G.; Parkin, D.T.; Svensson, L. & Votier, S.C. 2011. Taxonomic recommendations for British birds: seventh report. *Ibis* 153: 883–892.
- Sangster, G.; Collinson, J.M.; Helbig, A.J.; Knox, A.G. & Parkin, D.T. 2005. Taxonomic recommendations for British birds: third report. *Ibis* 147: 821–826.
- Sangster, G.; Garcia-R, J.C. & Trewick, S.A. 2015 A new genus for the lesser moorhen *Gallinula angulata* Sundevall, 1850 (Aves, Rallidae). *European Journal of Taxonomy* 153: 1–8.
- Saunders, H. 1896. *Catalogue of the birds in the British Museum. Gaviae (terns, gulls, and skuas)*. Volume 25. London: The Trustees, British Museum (Natural History). xvi + 339 pp., 1 pl.
- Schodde, R. & Mason, I.J. 1999. *The directory of Australian birds. A taxonomic and zoogeographic atlas of the biodiversity of birds in Australia and its territories. Passerines*. Collingwood, Victoria: CSIRO Publishing. x + 851 pp.
- Scofield, P. 1994. Taxonomy of the blue grey noddy group. *Australasian Seabird Group Newsletter* 27: 3–5.
- Scofield, R.P.; Mitchell, K.J.; Wood, J.R.; De Pietri, V.L.; Jarvie, S.; Llamas, B. & Cooper, A. 2017. The origin and phylogenetic relationships of the New Zealand ravens. *Molecular Phylogenetics and Evolution* 106: 136–143.
- Scofield, R.P.; Wood, J.R.; de Nascimento, L.; Robertson, H.A.; Colbourne, R.M.; De Pietri, V.L.; Innes, J. & Weir, J.T. 2021. Identification of the type locality of the South Island brown kiwi *Apteryx australis*. *Conservation Genetics* 22: 645–652.
- Scofield, R.P.; Worthy, T.H. & Tennyson, A.J.D. 2010. A heron (Aves: Ardeidae) from the early Miocene St Bathans fauna of southern New Zealand. *Records of the Australian Museum* 62: 89–104.
- Seabrook-Davison, M.; Huynen, L.; Lambert, D.M. & Brunton, D.H. 2009. Ancient DNA resolves identity and phylogeny of New Zealand's extinct and living quail (*Coturnix* sp.). *PLoS ONE* 4(7): e6400. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0006400. 7 pp.
- Sheldon, F.H.; Jones, C.E. & McCracken, K.G. 2000. Relative patterns and rates of evolution in heron nuclear and mitochondrial DNA. *Molecular Biology and Evolution* 17: 437–450.
- Shepherd, L.D.; Bulgarella, M.; Haddrath, O. & Miskelly, C.M. 2020. Genetic analyses reveal an unexpected refugial population of subantarctic snipe (*Coenocorypha aucklandica*). *Notornis* 67: 403–418.
- Shepherd, L.D. & Lambert, D.M. 2008. Ancient DNA and conservation: lessons from the endangered kiwi of New Zealand. *Molecular Ecology* 17: 2174–2184.
- Shepherd, L.D.; Tennyson, A.J.D.; Robertson, H.A.; Colbourne, R.M. & Ramstad, K.R. 2021. Hybridisation in kiwi (*Apteryx*; *Apterygidae*) requires taxonomic revision for the great spotted kiwi. *Avian Research* 12:24. doi.org/10.1186/s40657-021-00257-6. 13 pp.
- Shepherd, L.D.; Worthy, T.H.; Tennyson, A.J.D.; Scofield, R.P.; Ramstad, K.M. & Lambert, D.M. 2012. Ancient DNA analyses reveal contrasting phylogeographic patterns amongst kiwi (*Apteryx* spp.) and a recently extinct lineage of spotted kiwi. *PLoS ONE* 7(8): e42384. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0042384. 9 pp.
- Shirihai, H. 2002. *The complete guide to Antarctic wildlife—birds and marine mammals of the Antarctic continent and the Southern Ocean*. Princeton: Princeton University Press. 510 pp.
- Shirihai, H. & Bretagnolle, V. 2010. First observations at sea of Vanuatu petrel *Pterodroma (cervicalis) occulta*. *Bulletin of the British Ornithologists' Club* 130: 132–140.
- Sibley, C.G. & Monroe, B.L. Jr. 1990. *Distribution and taxonomy of birds of the world*. New Haven, Connecticut: Yale University Press. xxiv + 1111 pp.
- Slack, K.E.; Jones, C.M.; Ando, T.; Harrison, G.L.; Fordyce, R.E.; Arnason, U. & Penny, D. 2006. Early penguin fossils, plus mitochondrial genomes, calibrate avian evolution. *Molecular Biology and Evolution* 23: 1144–1155.
- Slikas, B.; Olson, S.L. & Fleischer, R.C. 2002. Rapid, independent evolution of flightlessness in four species of Pacific island rails (Rallidae): an analysis based on mitochondrial sequence data. *Journal of Avian Biology* 33: 5–14.
- Sorenson, M.D. & Payne, R.B. 2005. A molecular genetic analysis of cuckoo phylogeny. Pp. 68–94. In: Payne, R.B. *The cuckoos*. Oxford, UK: Oxford University Press.
- Sternkopf, V. 2011. Molekulargenetische Untersuchung in der Gruppe der Möwen (Laridae) zur Erforschung der Verwandtschaftsbeziehungen und phyleogeographischer Differenzierung. Inauguraldissertation zur Erlangung des akademischen Grades doctor rerum naturalium (Dr.rer. nat.) an der Mathematisch-Naturwissenschaftlichen Fakultät der Ernst-Moritz-Arndt-Universität, Greifswald, Germany.
- Tambussi, C.P.; Reguero, M.A.; Marenssi, S.A. & Santillana, S.N. 2005. *Crossvallia unienwillia*, a new Spheniscidae (Sphenisciformes, Aves) from the late Paleocene of Antarctica. *Geobios* 38: 667–675.
- Tan, H.Z.; Ng, E.Y.X.; Tang, Q.; Allport, G.A.; Jansen, J.J.F.J.; Tomkovich, P.S. & Rheindt, F.E. 2020. Population genomics of two congeneric palaeartic shorebirds reveals differential impacts of Quaternary climate oscillations across habitats types. *Scientific Reports*. Nature 9: 18172 www.nature.com/scientificreports/
- Taylor, B. & van Perlo, B. 1998. *Rails—a guide to the rails, crakes, gallinules and coots of the world*. Robertsbridge, East Sussex: Pica Press. 600 pp.
- Taylor, N.M. (Ed.). 1966. *The journal of Ensign Best 1837–1843*. Wellington: Government Printer. 465 pp.

- Tennyson, A.J.D. 2020. Holocene bird bones found at the subantarctic Auckland Islands. *Notornis* 67: 269–294.
- Tennyson, A.J.D., Cooper, J.H. & Shepherd, L.D. 2015. A new species of extinct *Pterodroma* petrel (Procellariiformes: Procellariidae) from the Chatham Islands, New Zealand. *Bulletin of the British Ornithologists' Club* 135: 267–277.
- Tennyson, A.J.D. & Mannering, A.A. 2018. A new species of Pliocene shearwater (Aves: Procellariidae) from New Zealand. *Tuhinga* 29: 1–19.
- Tennyson, A.J.D. & Millener, P.R. 1994. Bird extinctions and fossil bones from Mangere Island, Chatham Islands. *Notornis* 41 (suppl): 165–178.
- Tennyson, A.J.D.; Miskelly, C.M. & Totterman, S.L. 2012. Observations of collared petrels (*Pterodroma brevipes*) on Vanua Lava, Vanuatu, and a review of the species' breeding distribution. *Notornis* 59: 39–48.
- Tennyson, A.J.D.; Palma, R.L.; Robertson, H.; Worthy, T.H. & Gill, B.J. 2003. A new species of kiwi (Aves, Apterygiformes) from Okarito, New Zealand. *Records of the Auckland Museum* 40: 55–64.
- Tennyson, A.J.D.; Palma, R.L.; Scofield, R.P. & Worthy, T.H. 2010. Emending the species name for Lopdells' penguin. *Notornis* 57: 54–55.
- Tennyson, A.J.D. & Tomotani, B.M. 2021a. A new fossil species of kiwi (Aves: Apterygidae) from the mid-Pleistocene of New Zealand. *Historical Biology* 34: 352–360.
- Tennyson, A.J.D. & Tomotani, B.M. 2021b. A new fossil species of *Procellaria* (Aves: Procellariiformes) from the Pliocene of New Zealand. *Papéis Avulsos de Zoologia* v.61: e20216116.
- Thomas, D.B.; Ksepka, D.T.; Holvast, E.J.; Tennyson, A.J.D. & Scofield, P.R. 2020. Re-evaluating New Zealand's endemic Pliocene penguin genus. *New Zealand Journal of Geology and Geophysics* 63: 324–330.
- Thomas, D.B.; Tennyson, A.J.D.; Scofield, P.R.; Heath, T.A.; Pett, W. & Ksepka, D.T. 2020. Ancient crested penguin constrains timing of recruitment into seabird hotspot. *Proceedings of the Royal Society B* 287(1932) doi.org/10.1098/rspb.2020.1497
- Toy, R. & Toy, S. 2020. Post-translocation dispersal and home range establishment of roroa (great spotted kiwi, *Apteryx haastii*): need for long term monitoring and a flexible management strategy. *Notornis* 67: 511–525.
- Trewick, S.A. & Olley, L. 2016. Spatial size dimorphism in New Zealand's last endemic raptor, the kārearea *Falco novaeseelandiae*, coincides with a narrow sea strait. *Ibis* 158: 747–761.
- Turbott, E.G. 1952. Some stray tropical and sub-tropical sea birds in New Zealand. *Records of the Auckland Institute and Museum* 4: 187–192.
- Tyler, J.; Bonfitto, M.T.; Clucas, G.V.; Reddy, S. & Younger, J.L. 2020. Morphometric and genetic evidence for four species of gentoo penguin. *Ecology and Evolution* 10: 13836–13846.
- Undin, M.; Hills, S.F.K.; Lockhart, P.J. & Castro, I. 2021. Gaps in genetic knowledge affect conservation management of kiwi (*Apteryx*) species. *Ibis* 163: 1155–1174.
- Urantówka, A.D.; Kroczałk, A. & Mackiewicz, P. 2020. New view on the organization and evolution of Palaeognathae mitogenomes poses the question on the ancestral gene rearrangement in Aves. *BMC Genomics* 21: 874, doi.org/10.1186/s12864-020-07284-5. 416 pp.
- van Duijendijk, N. 2011. *Advanced bird ID handbook: the Western Palearctic*. London: New Holland. 416 pp.
- Voisin, C. & Voisin, J.-F. 2011. List of type specimens of birds in the collections of the Muséum National d'Histoire Naturelle (Paris, France). 22. Charadriiformes (Part 1: Stercorariidae, Laridae, Sternidae, Alcidae). *Journal of the National Museum (Prague), Natural History Series* 180: 39–56.
- Walker, K.J.; Elliott, G.P.; Rexer-Huber, K.; Parker, G.C.; Sagar, P.M. & McClelland, P.J. 2020. Shipwrecks and mollymawks: an account of Disappointment Island birds. *Notornis* 67: 213–245.
- Wallace, W.J.; Morris-Pocock, J.A.; González-Solís, J.; Quillfeldt, P. & Friesen, V.L. 2017. A phylogenetic test of sympatric speciation in the Hydrobatinae (Aves: Procellariiformes). *Molecular Phylogenetics and Evolution* 107: 39–47.
- Wehi, P.; Carter, L.; Harawira, T.; Fitzgerald, G.; Lloyd, K.; Whaanga, H. & MacLeod, C. 2019. Enhancing awareness and adoption of cultural values through use of Māori bird names in science communication and environmental reporting. *New Zealand Journal of Ecology* 43: 1–9.
- Weick, F. 2006. *Owls (Strigiformes): annotated and illustrated checklist*. Berlin: Springer. 388 pp.
- Weir, J.T.; Haddrath, O.; Robertson, H.A.; Colbourne, R.M. & Baker, A.J. 2016. Explosive ice age diversification of kiwi. *PNAS* 113 (38) E5580–E5587 (doi.org/10.1073/pnas.1603795113). 8 pp.
- Williams, G.R. 1951. Further notes on the chukar. *Notornis* 4: 151–157.
- Williams, H.W. 1906. Maori bird names. *Journal of the Polynesian Society* 15: 193–208.
- Williams, H.W. 1917. *A dictionary of the Maori language*. 5th edition. Wellington: Government Printer. xxiv + 590 pp.
- Williams, H.W. 1957. *A dictionary of the Maori language*. 6th edition. Wellington: R.E. Owen, Government Printer. xxvi + 504 pp.
- Williams, H.W. 1971. *Dictionary of the Maori language*. 7th edition. Wellington: GP Publications Ltd. xl + 507 pp.
- Williams, M.; Tennyson, A.J.D. & Sim, D. 2014. Island differentiation of New Zealand's extinct mergansers (Anatidae: Mergini), with description of a new species from Chatham Island. *Wildfowl* 64: 3–34.
- Williams, M.; Tennyson, A.J.D. & Sim, D. 2015. Island differentiation of New Zealand's extinct mergansers (Anatidae: Mergini), with description of a new species from Chatham Island: correction and addition. *Wildfowl* 65: 166–168.
- Wood, J.R.; Lawrence, H.A.; Scofield, R.P.; Taylor, G.A.; Lyver, P.O'B. & Gleeson, D.M. 2017. Morphological, behavioural, and genetic evidence supports reinstatement of full species status for grey-faced petrel, *Pterodroma macroptera gouldi* (Procellariiformes: Procellariidae). *Zoological Journal of the Linnean Society* 179: 201–216.
- Wood, J.R.; Mitchell, K.J.; Scofield, R.P.; De Pietri, V.L.; Rawlence, N.J. & Cooper, A. 2017. Phylogenetic relationships and terrestrial adaptations of the extinct laughing owl, *Sceloglaux albifacies* (Aves: Strigidae). *Zoological Journal of the Linnean Society* 179: 907–918.
- Wood, J.R.; Mitchell, K.J.; Scofield, R.P.; Tennyson, A.J.D.; Fidler, A.E.; Wilmshurst, J.M.; Llamas, B. & Cooper, A. 2014. An extinct nestorid parrot (Aves, Psittaciformes, Nestoridae) from the Chatham Islands, New Zealand. *Zoological Journal of the Linnean Society* 172: 185–199.

- Worthy, T.H. 1997. The Quaternary fossil fauna of South Canterbury, South Island, New Zealand. *Journal of the Royal Society of New Zealand* 27: 67–162.
- Worthy, T.H. 1998a. A remarkable fossil and archaeological avifauna from Marfells Beach, Lake Grassmere, South Island, New Zealand. *Records of the Canterbury Museum* 12(1): 79–176.
- Worthy, T.H. 1998b. Fossil avifaunas from Old Neck and Native Island, Stewart Island—Polynesian middens or natural sites? *Records of the Canterbury Museum* 12(2): 49–82.
- Worthy, T.H. 1998c. Fossils indicate *Pelecanoides georgicus* had large colonies at Mason Bay, Stewart Island, New Zealand. *Notornis* 45: 229–246.
- Worthy, T.H. 2011. Descriptions and phylogenetic relationships of a new genus and two new species of Oligo-Miocene cormorants (Aves: Phalacrocoracidae) from Australia. *Zoological Journal of the Linnean Society* 163: 277–314.
- Worthy, T.H. & Grant-Mackie, J.A. 2003. Late-Pleistocene avifaunas from Cape Wanbrow, Otago, South Island, New Zealand. *Journal of the Royal Society of New Zealand* 33: 427–485.
- Worthy, T.H.; Hand, S.J.; Archer, M.; Scofield, R.P. & De Pietri, V.L. 2019. Evidence for a giant parrot from the early Miocene of New Zealand. *Biology Letters* 15: 20190467. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1098/rsbl.2019.0467>. 5 pp.
- Worthy, T.H.; Hand, S.J.; Archer, M.; Scofield, R.P. & De Pietri V.L. 2021. Correction to ‘Evidence for a giant parrot from the early Miocene of New Zealand’. *Biology Letters* 17: 20210608. <https://doi.org/10.1098/rsbl.2021.0608>. 1 pp.
- Worthy, T.H.; Hand, S.J.; Nguyen, J.M.T.; Tennyson, A.J.D.; Worthy, J.P.; Scofield, R.P.; Boles, W.E. & Archer, M. 2010. Biogeographical and phylogenetic implications of an early Miocene wren (Aves: Passeriformes: Acanthisittidae) from New Zealand. *Journal of Vertebrate Paleontology* 30: 479–498.
- Worthy, T.H. & Holdaway, R.N. 2002. *The lost world of the moa: prehistoric life of New Zealand*. Christchurch: Canterbury University Press. xxxiii + 719 pp.
- Worthy, T.H.; Holdaway, R.N.; Alloway, B.V.; Jones, J.; Winn, J. & Turner, D. 2002. A rich Pleistocene–Holocene avifaunal sequence from Te Waka #1: terrestrial fossil vertebrate faunas from inland Hawke’s Bay, North Island, New Zealand. Part 2. *Tuhinga: Records of the Museum of New Zealand Te Papa Tongarewa* 13: 1–38.
- Worthy, T.H. & Jouventin, P. 1999. The fossil avifauna of Amsterdam Island, Indian Ocean. Pp. 39–65. In: Olson, S.L. (Ed.). Avian paleontology at the close of the 20th Century. Proceedings of the 4th International meeting of the Society of Avian Paleontology and Evolution, Washington, D.C., 4–7 June 1996. *Smithsonian Contributions to Paleobiology* 89: i–viii + 1–344.
- Worthy, T.H. & Scofield, R.P. 2012. Twenty-first century advances in knowledge of the biology of moa (Aves: Dinornithiformes): a morphological analysis and diagnosis revised. *New Zealand Journal of Zoology* 39: 87–153.
- Worthy, T.H.; Tennyson, A.J.D.; Archer, M. & Scofield, R.P. 2010. First record of *Palaelodus* (Aves: Phoenicopteriformes) from New Zealand. *Records of the Australian Museum* 62: 77–88.
- Worthy, T.H.; Tennyson, A.J.D.; Jones, C.; McNamara, J.A. & Douglas, B.J. 2007. Miocene waterfowl and other birds from Central Otago, New Zealand. *Journal of Systematic Palaeontology* 5: 1–39.
- Worthy, T.H.; Tennyson, A.J.D. & Scofield, R.P. 2011a. Fossils reveal an early Miocene presence of the aberrant gruiform Aves: Aptornithidae in New Zealand. *Journal of Ornithology* 152: 669–680.
- Worthy, T.H.; Tennyson, A.J.D. & Scofield, R.P. 2011b. An early Miocene diversity of parrots (Aves, Strigopidae, Nestorinae) from New Zealand. *Journal of Vertebrate Paleontology* 31: 1102–1116.
- Worthy, T.H.; Worthy, J.P.; Tennyson, A.J.D.; Salisbury, S.W.; Hand, S.J. & Scofield, R.P. 2013. Miocene fossils show that kiwi (*Apteryx*, *Apterygidae*) are probably not phyletic dwarves. Pp 63–80 in Göhlich, U.B. & Kroh, A. (eds) *Paleornithological Research 2013 (Proceedings of the 8th International Meeting of the Society of Avian Palaeontology and Evolution)*. Vienna: Verlag Naturhistorisches Museum.
- Worthy, T.H.; Worthy, J.P.; Tennyson, A.J.D. & Scofield, R.P. 2013. A bittern (Aves: Ardeidae) from the early Miocene of New Zealand. *Palaeontological Journal* 47: 1331–1343.
- Wright, T.F.; Schirtzinger, E.E.; Matsumoto, T.; Eberhard, J.R.; Graves, G.R.; Sanchez, J.J.; Capelli, S.; Muller, H.; Scharpegge, J.; Chambers, G.K. & Fleischer, R.C. 2008. A multilocus molecular phylogeny of the parrots (Psittaciformes): support for a Gondwanan origin during the Cretaceous. *Molecular Biology and Evolution* 25: 2141–2156.
- Yonezawa, T.; Segawa, T.; Mori, H.; Campos, P.F.; Hongoh, Y.; Endo, H.; Akiyoshi, A.; Kohno, N.; Nishida, S.; Wu, J.; Jin, H.; Adachi, J.; Kishino, H.; Kurokawa, K.; Nogi, Y.; Tanabe, H.; Mukoyama, H.; Yoshida, K.; Rasoamiaranana, A.; Yamagishi, S.; Hayashi, Y.; Yoshida, A.; Koike, H.; Akishinonomiya, F.; Willerslev, E. & Hasegawa, M. 2017. Phylogenomics and morphology of extinct Paleognaths reveal the origin and evolution of the ratites. *Current Biology* 27: 68–77.
- Zuccon, D. & Ericson, P.G.P. 2012. Molecular and morphological evidences place the extinct New Zealand endemic *Turnagra capensis* in the Oriolidae. *Molecular Phylogenetics & Evolution* 62: 414–426.
- Zuccon, D.; Prŷs-Jones, R.; Rasmussen, P.C. & Ericson, P.G.P. 2012. The phylogenetic relationships and generic limits of finches (Fringillidae). *Molecular Phylogenetics and Evolution* 62: 581–596.